

# Generalized $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic and monotonicity of the generalized reduced volume in the Ricci flow

By

Shu-Yu HSU

## Abstract

Suppose  $M$  is a complete  $n$ -dimensional manifold,  $n \geq 2$ , with a metric  $\bar{g}_{ij}(x, t)$  that evolves by the Ricci flow  $\partial_t \bar{g}_{ij} = -2\bar{R}_{ij}$  in  $M \times (0, T)$ . For any  $0 < p < 1$ ,  $(p_0, t_0) \in M \times (0, T)$ ,  $q \in M$ , we define the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -length between  $p_0$  and  $q$ ,  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic, the generalized reduced distance  $l_p$  and the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$ ,  $\tau = t_0 - t$ , corresponding to the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic at the point  $p_0$  at time  $t_0$ . Under the condition  $\bar{R}_{ij} \geq -c_1 \bar{g}_{ij}$  on  $M \times (0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ , we will prove the existence of a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which minimize the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length between  $p_0$  and  $q$  for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ . This result for the case  $p = 1/2$  was mentioned and used many times by G. Perelman but no proof of it was given in Perelman's papers on Ricci flow. Let  $g(\tau) = \bar{g}(t_0 - \tau)$  and let  $\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\tau)$  be the rescaled generalized reduced volume. Suppose  $M$  also has nonnegative curvature operator with respect to the metric  $\bar{g}(t)$  for any  $t \in (0, T)$  and when  $1/2 < p < 1$ ,  $M$  has uniformly bounded scalar curvature on  $(0, T)$ . Let  $0 < c < 1$  and let  $\tau_0 = \min((2(1-p))^{-1/(2p-1)}, t_0)$ . For any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$  we prove that there exists a constant  $A_0 \geq 0$  with  $A_0 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$  such that  $e^{-A_0 \tau} \tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  is a monotone decreasing function in  $(0, \bar{\tau}_1)$  where  $\bar{\tau}_1 = (1-c)\tau_0$  if  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $\bar{\tau}_1 = t_0$  if  $p = 1/2$ . When  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow, we will prove a monotonicity property of the rescaled generalized volume  $\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\tau)$  with respect to  $\bar{\tau}$  for any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$ . When  $p = 1/2$ , the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -length,  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic, the  $l_p$  function and  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  are equal to the  $\mathcal{L}$ -length,  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic, the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  introduced by Perelman in his papers on Ricci flow. We will also prove a result on the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}$  which was used by Perelman without proof in [18].

## 0. Introduction

Recently there is a lot of study on the Ricci flow on manifold by R. Hamilton [5]–[10], S. Y. Hsu [11]–[15], G. Perelman [18], [19], W. X. Shi [20], [21],

---

2000 *Mathematics Subject Classification*(s). Primary 58J35, 53C44; Secondary 58C99.

Received October 19, 2008

Revised May 18, 2008

L. F. Wu [23], [24], and others. We refer the readers to the lecture notes by B. Chow [2] and the book [3] by B. Chow and D. Knopf on the basics of Ricci flow and the papers [18], [19], of G. Perelman for the most recent results on Ricci flow.

In the paper [5] R. Hamilton proved that if  $M$  is a compact manifold with a metric  $\bar{g}$  that evolves by the Ricci flow

$$(0.1) \quad \frac{\partial}{\partial t} \bar{g}_{ij} = -2\bar{R}_{ij}$$

where  $\bar{R}_{ij}$  is the Ricci curvature of  $\bar{g}$  and  $\bar{g}_{ij}(x, 0) = \bar{g}_{ij}(x)$  is a metric of strictly positive Ricci curvature, then the evolving metric will converge modulo scaling to a metric of constant positive curvature. Similiar result was obtained by R. Hamilton [6] for compact 4-dimensional manifolds with positive curvature operator. Harnack inequality for the Ricci flow was proved by R. Hamilton in [8].

Short time existence of solutions of the Ricci flow on complete non-compact Riemannian manifold with bounded curvature was proved by W. X. Shi [20]. Global existence and uniqueness of solutions of the Ricci flow on non-compact manifold  $\mathbb{R}^2$  was obtained by S. Y. Hsu in [11]. Asymptotic behaviour of solutions of the Ricci flow equation on  $\mathbb{R}^2$  was proved by S. Y. Hsu in [12], [13], [14].

In [18], [19], G. Perelman introduced the concept of  $\mathcal{L}$ -length,  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic, the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  for Ricci flow on complete manifolds with positive bounded curvature operator. G. Perelman found that these are very useful tools in studying Ricci flow on manifolds. He used these tools to proved many new properties for the Ricci flow in [18], [19]. These included the non-local collapsing theorem and the asymptotic convergence of a subsequence of the rescaled solution of an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution to a soliton solution of the Ricci flow on complete manifold with positive bounded curvature operator. Recently R. Ye ([25], [26]) extended the concept of  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic, the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  to manifolds with a lower bound on the Ricci curvature.

In this paper we will generalize the notion of  $\mathcal{L}$ -length,  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic, the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  of G. Perelman. For any  $0 < p < 1$ ,  $\tau > 0$ , we will define the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ -length,  $L_p(q, \tau)$ -length,  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map,  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic, and reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  and prove various properties of them in this paper. When  $p = 1/2$ ,  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ ,  $L_p(q, \tau)$ ,  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map,  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  are equal to the  $\mathcal{L}(q, \tau)$ ,  $L(q, \tau)$ ,  $\mathcal{L}$ -exponential map, and  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  defined by G. Perelman in [18].

For any  $q \in M$ ,  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ , we will prove the existence of a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which minimize the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length. This result for the case  $p = 1/2$  was mentioned and used many times in G. Perelman's paper on Ricci flow [18], [19], but no proof of it is given in his papers. There is also no detail proof of this important result in the recent book of J.W. Morgan and G. Tian [17] and the paper of H. D. Cao and X. P. Zhu [4] on Ricci flow. My result is new and answers in

affirmative the existence of such  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic minimizer for the  $L_p(q, \tau)$ -length which is crucial to the proof of many results in [18], [19]. We also prove that for any  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic there does not exist any  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate points along the curve.

One remarkable property of the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$ ,  $\tau = t_0 - t$ , with respect to any point  $(p_0, t_0) \in M \times (0, T)$  proved by G. Perelman is that it is a monotone decreasing function of  $\tau \in (0, t_0)$ . Surprisingly in this paper we find that the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  with respect to any point  $(p_0, t_0) \in M \times (0, T)$  also has similar monotonicity property. Suppose  $M$  is complete and has nonnegative curvature operator with respect to the metric  $\bar{g}(t)$  for any  $t \in (0, T)$  and when  $1/2 < p < 1$ ,  $M$  has uniformly bounded scalar curvature on  $(0, T)$ . Let  $0 < c < 1$  and let

$$(0.2) \quad \tau_0 = \min((2(1-p))^{-\frac{1}{2p-1}}, t_0).$$

For any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$  we prove that there exists a constant  $A_0 \geq 0$  with  $A_0 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$  such that  $e^{-A_0\tau}\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  is a monotone decreasing function in  $(0, \bar{\tau}_1)$  where  $\bar{\tau}_1 = (1-c)\tau_0$  if  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $\bar{\tau}_1 = t_0$  if  $p = 1/2$ . Since the proof of monotonicity uses Hamilton's Harnack inequality which is valid when the manifold has non-negative curvature, the condition of non-negative curvature is necessary for the argument to hold.

Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow and  $g(\tau) = \bar{g}(t_0 - \tau)$  for some constant  $t_0 < 0$ . Let  $\bar{\tau}_0 > 0$  for  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $\bar{\tau}_0 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$ . When  $1/2 < p < 1$ , suppose also that  $(M, g(\tau))$  is compact. Let  $\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)$  be the rescaled generalized volume. Then for any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$  there exist constants  $A_0 \geq 0, A_1 \geq 0, A_2 \geq 0, c_2 > 0$ , such that  $e^{-W(\bar{\tau}, \rho)}\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $\bar{\tau} > \bar{\tau}_0$  for any  $\rho$  satisfying

$$(0.3) \quad 0 < \rho \leq \left(\frac{1}{2(1-p)}\right)^{\frac{1}{2p-1}}$$

where  $W(\bar{\tau}, \rho) = (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p} + A_2\rho^{2p-3}e^{2c_2\bar{\tau}\rho})\bar{\tau}$ . Moreover

$$(0.4) \quad \lim_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) = \left(\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{1-p}\right)^n \rho^{\frac{(1-p)n}{2}}.$$

Note that when  $p = 1/2$ , one can take  $A_0 = A_1 = A_2 = 0$  and the result reduces to Perelman's monotonicity property for ancient  $\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow [18].

When  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow in  $(-\infty, 0)$  with uniformly bounded nonnegative curvature operator, then for any  $t_0 < 0, p_0 \in M, 0 < p < 1, \tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$  we prove the existence of  $\{q_i\}_{i=-\infty}^\infty \subset M$  and  $\{\bar{\tau}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty, \bar{\tau}_i \rightarrow \infty$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ , such that the rescaled  $l_p$  function  $l_p^{\bar{\tau}_i}(q, \tau)$  converges uniformly on  $B_0(q_i, r) \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $r > 0$  where  $B_0(q_i, r)$  is the geodesic ball of radius  $r > 0$  with respect to the metric  $\bar{g}(t_0)$ .

We will also prove a result on the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  used by Perelman without proof in [18]. Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient

$\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow with uniformly bounded nonnegative curvature operator such that  $\bar{g}(t)$  is not a flat metric for any  $t < 0$ . If  $\tilde{V}(\tau_1) = \tilde{V}(\tau_2)$  for some  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ , we prove that the reduced distance  $l \in C^\infty(M \times [\tau_1, \tau_2])$  and  $g(\tau) = \bar{g}(t_0 - \tau)$  is a shrinking soliton in  $M \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]$ .

The plan of the paper is as follows. In Section 1 we will use a modification of the technique of [18] to prove the first variation formula for the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length. We will also prove the existence of a  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic minimizer for the  $L_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length. We will prove various properties of the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map and  $\mathcal{L}_p$  cut locus in Section 2. In Section 3 we will prove the second variation formula for the  $L_p(q, \tau)$ -length. We will prove various properties of the  $L_p(q, \tau)$ -length, the generalized reduced distance  $l_p$  and the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$ . In Section 4 we will prove the monotonicity property the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$ . In Section 5 we will prove the monotonicity property of the rescaled generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\tau)$  with respect to  $\bar{\tau}$ . In Section 6 we will prove a result on the the reduced distance and the reduced volume used by Perelman without proof in [18].

We first start with a definition. Let  $(M, \bar{g})$  be a Riemannian manifold with the metric  $\bar{g}$  evolving by the Ricci flow (0.1) in  $M \times (0, T)$ . Let  $(p_0, t_0) \in M \times (0, T)$ . For any  $0 < t < t_0$ , let  $\tau = t_0 - t$  and

$$(0.5) \quad g(\tau) = \bar{g}(t_0 - \tau).$$

Let  $R(q, \tau)$ ,  $R_{ij}(q, \tau)$ ,  $R(X_1, X_2)X_3(q, \tau)$  and  $Rm(q, \tau)$  be the scalar curvature, Ricci curvature, curvature and Riemannian curvature of  $M$  at  $q$  with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$  and  $X_1, X_2, X_3 \in T_qM$ . For any  $0 < p < 1$ ,  $p_0, q \in M$ ,  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ , and piecewise differentiable curve  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  joining  $p_0$  and  $q$  with  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ , we define the  $\mathcal{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length of the curve  $\gamma$  between  $p_0$  and  $q$  by

$$\mathcal{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) = \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) + |\gamma'(\tau)|^2) d\tau$$

where  $|\gamma'(\tau)| = |\gamma'(\tau)|_{g(\tau)}$ . Let  $\mathcal{F}^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$  be the family of all piecewise differentiable curves  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ ,

$$L_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau}) = \inf_{\gamma \in \mathcal{F}^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau})} \mathcal{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}),$$

and let

$$(0.6) \quad l_p^{p_0}(q, \tau) = (1 - p) \frac{L_p^{p_0}(q, \tau)}{\tau^{1-p}}$$

be the generalized reduced distance. Let

$$\tilde{V}_p^{p_0}(\tau) = \int_M \tau^{-(1-p)n} e^{-l_p^{p_0}(q, \tau)} dV_{g(\tau)}$$

be the generalized reduced volume corresponding to the  $\mathcal{L}_p^{p_0}(\cdot, \tau)$ -length with respect to  $(p_0, t_0)$ . Then  $l^{p_0}(q, \tau) = l_{\frac{1}{2}}^{p_0}(q, \tau)$  and  $\tilde{V}^{p_0}(\tau) = \tilde{V}_{\frac{1}{2}}^{p_0}(\tau)$  are the

reduced length and reduced volume of Perelman [18]. Let  $L^{p_0}(q, \tau) = L^{\frac{p_0}{2}}(q, \tau)$ . When there is no ambiguity, we will drop the superscript  $p_0$ .

Let  $q_0 \in M$  and  $0 < \tau_0 < t_0$ . For any  $0 < p < 1$ ,  $q \in M$ ,  $\bar{\tau} \in (\tau_0, t_0)$ , and piecewise differentiable curve  $\gamma : [\tau_0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  joining  $q_0$  and  $q$  with  $\gamma(\tau_0) = q_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ , we define the  $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length of the curve  $\gamma$  between  $q_0$  and  $q$  by

$$\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) = \int_{\tau_0}^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) + |\gamma'(\tau)|^2) d\tau.$$

Let  $\mathcal{F}_{\tau_0}^{q_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$  be the family of all piecewise differentiable curves  $\gamma : [\tau_0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  satisfying  $\gamma(\tau_0) = q_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$  and let

$$L_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(q, \bar{\tau}) = \inf_{\gamma \in \mathcal{F}_{\tau_0}^{q_0}(q, \bar{\tau})} \mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}).$$

For any  $r > 0$ ,  $0 \leq \tau \leq t_0$ , we let  $B_\tau(q, r)$  be the geodesic ball of radius  $r$  in  $M$  around the point  $q$  with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$ . For any  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ , we let

$$\mathcal{B}(v, r) = \{v' \in T_{p_0}M : |v - v'|_{g(p_0, 0)} < r\}.$$

We also let  $d_\tau(q_1, q_2) = d_{g(\tau)}(q_1, q_2)$  be the distance between  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$ . For any  $0 < \tau < t_0$  and measurable set  $E \subset M$  with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$ , we let  $m_\tau(E)$  be the measure of  $E$  with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$ . We let  $dV_{g(\tau)}(q) = \sqrt{g(q, \tau)}dq$  be the volume form of the metric  $g(\tau)$ .

Let  $\kappa > 0$ . A Ricci flow  $(M, \bar{g})$  is said to be  $\kappa$ -noncollapsing at the point  $(q', t')$  on the scale  $r_0 > 0$  [18] if  $\forall 0 < r \leq r_0$ ,

$$\text{Vol}_{\bar{g}(t')} (B_{\bar{g}(t')}(q', r)) \geq \kappa r^n$$

holds whenever

$$|\overline{\text{Rm}}|(q, t) \leq r^{-2} \quad \forall d_{\bar{g}(t')}(q', q) < r, t' - r^2 \leq t \leq t'$$

holds where  $B_{\bar{g}(t')}(q', r)$  is the geodesic ball of radius  $r$  in  $M$  around the point  $q'$  with respect to the metric  $\bar{g}(t')$ . A Ricci flow  $(M, \bar{g})$  is said to be an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution if it is a solution of the Ricci flow in  $M \times (-\infty, 0]$  such that for each  $t \leq 0$  the metric  $\bar{g}(t)$  is not a flat metric,  $(M, \bar{g}(t))$  is a complete manifold of nonnegative and uniformly bounded curvature, and  $(M, \bar{g}(t))$  is  $\kappa$ -noncollapsing on all scales at all points of  $M \times (-\infty, 0]$ .

We will assume that  $M$  is complete with respect to  $\bar{g}(t)$  for any  $0 < t < T$  for the rest of the paper. Unless stated otherwise we will fix the point  $(p_0, t_0)$  and consider the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ ,  $l_p(q, \tau)$ , etc. all with respect to this fixed reference point. We also associate the product manifold  $M \times (0, t_0)$  with the product metric  $g dx^2 \oplus d\tau^2$ .

**1. Existence of  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic minimizer**

In this section we will use the technique of [18] to prove the first variation formula for  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau})$  for any curve  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  joining  $p_0$  and  $q$  with  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ . We will prove the non-trivial fact that the  $L_p(q, \bar{\tau})$  length can be realized by some  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $M$ . We will let  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_{g(\tau)}$  be the inner product with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$ . When there is no ambiguity, we will write  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle$  for  $\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_{g(\tau)}$ .

**Lemma 1.1.** *Let  $\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau})$  and let  $Y : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow TM$  be a vector field along  $\gamma$  with  $Y(0) = 0$ . Suppose  $\gamma$  is differentiable on  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$ . Then*

$$(1.1) \quad \begin{aligned} \delta_Y \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau}) \rangle \\ &+ \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\langle Y, \nabla R - \frac{2p}{\tau} X - 2\nabla_X X - 4Ric(X, \cdot) \right\rangle d\tau \end{aligned}$$

where  $X = X(\tau) = \gamma'(\tau)$  and the inner product in the integral is evaluated at  $\tau$ .

*Proof.* Let  $f : [0, \bar{\tau}] \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow M$  be a variation of  $\gamma$  with respect to the vector field  $Y$  such that  $f(0, z) = p_0$  for all  $z \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ . Then

$$(1.2) \quad \begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{dz} \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), f(\cdot, z), \bar{\tau}) \\ &= \frac{d}{dz} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (R(f(\tau, z), \tau) + |\nabla_\tau f|^2) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (\langle \nabla_z f, \nabla R \rangle + 2\langle \nabla_\tau f, \nabla_z \nabla_\tau f \rangle) d\tau \\ (1.3) \quad &= \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (\langle \nabla_z f, \nabla R \rangle + 2\langle \nabla_\tau f, \nabla_\tau \nabla_z f \rangle) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left( \langle \nabla_z f, \nabla R \rangle + 2\frac{d}{d\tau} \langle \nabla_\tau f, \nabla_z f \rangle - 2\langle \nabla_\tau \nabla_\tau f, \nabla_z f \rangle \right. \\ &\quad \left. - 4Ric(\nabla_\tau f, \nabla_z f) \right) d\tau \\ &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_\tau f(\bar{\tau}, z), \nabla_z f(\bar{\tau}, z) \rangle \\ &+ \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\langle \nabla_z f, \nabla R - \frac{2p}{\tau} \nabla_\tau f - 2\nabla_\tau \nabla_\tau f - 4Ric(\nabla_\tau f, \cdot) \right\rangle d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

By putting  $z = 0$  in (1.3), (1.1) follows. □

Let  $s_0 = t_0^{1-p}$ . For any  $0 \leq \bar{s} < s_0$ ,  $p_0 \in M$ ,  $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{F}^{p_0}(q, \bar{s})$ ,  $0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}$ , let  $\tilde{R}(q, s) = R(q, s^{\frac{1}{1-p}})$ ,

$$\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p^{p_0}(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) = \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2) ds$$

where  $|\tilde{\gamma}'(s)| = |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|_{g(s^{1/(1-p)})}$  and let

$$\tilde{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{s}) = \inf_{\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{F}^{p_0}(q, \bar{s})} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p^{p_0}(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}).$$

Then by direct computation,

$$(1.4) \quad \mathcal{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) = \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p^{p_0}(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{\tau}^{1-p}) \quad \forall \gamma \in \mathcal{F}^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$$

where

$$(1.5) \quad \tilde{\gamma}(s) = \gamma(\tau), s = \tau^{1-p}.$$

Hence

$$(1.6) \quad L_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau}) = \tilde{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau}^{1-p}).$$

We will now let  $\tilde{g}(q, s) = g(q, \tau)$ ,  $\tilde{R}(q, s) = R(q, \tau)$ ,  $\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(q, s) = \text{Ric}(q, \tau)$ , and  $\tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r(q, s) = \Gamma_{ij}^r(q, \tau)$  where  $s = \tau^{1-p}$  for the rest of the paper. When there is no ambiguity, we will drop the superscript  $p_0$ .

**Lemma 1.2.** *Let  $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{s})$  and let  $\tilde{Y} : [0, \bar{s}] \rightarrow TM$  be a vector field along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with  $\tilde{Y}(0) = 0$ . Suppose  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is differentiable on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . Then*

$$\begin{aligned} & \delta_{\tilde{Y}} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) \\ &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{Y}(\tilde{R}) + 2(1-p)^2 \langle \tilde{X}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y} \rangle) ds \\ &= 2(1-p) \langle \tilde{X}(\bar{s}), \tilde{Y}(\bar{s}) \rangle \\ (1.7) \quad & + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \langle \tilde{Y}, s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} - 2(1-p)^2 \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{X} - 4(1-p) s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot) \rangle ds \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tilde{X}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s)$ ,  $\tilde{R}(s) = \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s)$ ,  $\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(s) = \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s)$  and  $\nabla = \nabla^{g(\tau)}$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{f} : [0, \bar{s}] \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow M$  be a variation of  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with respect to the vector field  $\tilde{Y}$  such that  $\tilde{f}(0, z) = p_0$  for all  $z \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ . Since

$$(1.8) \quad \frac{d}{ds} \tilde{g}_{ij}(q, s) = \frac{d}{d\tau} g_{ij}(q, \tau) \cdot \frac{d\tau}{ds} = \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}_{ij}(q, s)$$

where  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{d}{dz} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(\tilde{f}(\bar{s}, z), \tilde{f}(\cdot, z), \bar{s}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla \tilde{R} \rangle + 2(1-p)^2 \langle \nabla_s \tilde{f}, \nabla_z \nabla_s \tilde{f} \rangle) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla \tilde{R} \rangle + 2(1-p)^2 \langle \nabla_s \tilde{f}, \nabla_s \nabla_z \tilde{f} \rangle) ds \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\{ s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla \tilde{R} \rangle + 2(1-p)^2 \left[ \frac{d}{ds} \langle \nabla_s \tilde{f}, \nabla_z \tilde{f} \rangle \right. \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \left. - \langle \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{f}, \nabla_z \tilde{f} \rangle - \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \nabla_z \tilde{f}) \right] \right\} ds \\
 &= 2(1-p) \langle \nabla_s \tilde{f}(\bar{s}, z), \nabla_z \tilde{f}(\bar{s}, z) \rangle \\
 (1.9) \quad & + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} - 2(1-p)^2 \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{f} - 4(1-p) s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \cdot) \rangle ds.
 \end{aligned}$$

Putting  $z = 0$  in (1.9) we get (1.7) and the lemma follows. □

From Lemma 1.1 and Lemma 1.2 it is natural to define the following. We say that a curve  $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{s})$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic at  $s \in (0, \bar{s})$  if it satisfies

$$(1.10) \quad \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot) = 0$$

at  $s$  where  $\tilde{X}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s)$  and  $\nabla = \nabla^{g(\tau)}$  with  $\tau = s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}$ . We say that it is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic in  $(0, \bar{s})$  if it satisfies (1.10) in  $(0, \bar{s})$ . Similarly we say a curve  $\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau})$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic at  $\tau \in (0, \bar{\tau})$  if it satisfies

$$(1.11) \quad \nabla_X X - \frac{1}{2} \nabla R + \frac{p}{\tau} X + 2\text{Ric}(X, \cdot) = 0$$

at  $\tau$  where  $X(\tau) = \gamma'(\tau)$ . We say that  $\gamma$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic in  $(0, \bar{\tau})$  if it satisfies (1.11) in  $(0, \bar{\tau})$ . Note that when  $p = 1/2$ , the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic is equal to the  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic defined by Perelman in [18]. By direct computation we have the following lemma.

**Lemma 1.3.**  *$\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau})$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic at  $\tau \in (0, \bar{\tau})$  if and only if  $\tilde{\gamma} \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{s})$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic at  $s \in (0, \bar{s})$  where  $\gamma, \tilde{\gamma}, s$  and  $\tau$  are related by (1.5) and  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . Moreover*

$$(1.12) \quad \tilde{\gamma}'(0) = \frac{1}{1-p} \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} \tau^p \gamma'(\tau).$$

**Lemma 1.4.** *For any  $\tilde{v} \in T_{p_0} M$ , there exists a unique solution  $\tilde{\gamma}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v})$  of (1.10) in  $(0, s_0)$  with*

$$(1.13) \quad \begin{cases} \tilde{\gamma}(0) = p_0 \\ \tilde{\gamma}'(0) = \tilde{v} \end{cases}$$



for some constant  $s_0 \in (0, t_0^{1-p}]$  where  $(0, s_0)$  is the maximal interval of existence of the solution. If  $s_0 < t_0^{1-p}$ , then

$$(1.14) \quad \lim_{s \rightarrow s_0^-} d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s)) = \infty.$$

If the Ricci curvature of  $M$  is uniformly bounded on  $(0, t_0]$ , then  $s_0 = t_0^{1-p}$ .

*Proof.* Uniqueness of solution of (1.10) satisfying (1.13) follows by standard O.D.E. theory. Hence we only need to prove existence of solution of (1.10) satisfying (1.13). We will use a continuity argument similar to that of section 17 of [16] to prove the existence of solution of (1.10) satisfying (1.13). We first observe that by standard O.D.E. theory there exists a constant  $s'_0 \in (0, t_0^{1-p})$  such that (1.10), (1.13), has a unique solution  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  in  $(0, s'_0)$ . Let  $(0, s_0)$  be the maximum interval of existence of solution  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  of (1.10) and (1.13). Then  $s_0 \leq t_0^{1-p}$ . If  $s_0 = t_0^{1-p}$ , we are done. So we suppose that  $s_0 < t_0^{1-p}$ . We claim that (1.14) holds. Suppose not. Then there exist constants  $s_1 \in (0, s_0)$  and  $C_1 > 0$  such that

$$(1.15) \quad d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s)) \leq C_1 \quad \forall s_1 \leq s < s_0.$$

Let

$$r_0 = \sup_{0 \leq s < s_0} d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s)).$$

By (1.15)  $r_0 < \infty$ . Since  $\overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [0, s_0^{1/(1-p)}]$  is compact in  $(q, \tau) \in M \times [0, t_0)$  when  $M$  is equipped with the metric  $g(0)$ , there exists a constant  $K_1 > 0$  such that

$$(1.16) \quad |R| + |\nabla R| + |\text{Ric}| \leq K_1$$

on  $(q, \tau) \in \overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [0, s_0^{1/(1-p)}]$ . Then by (1.10) and (1.16),

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{d}{ds} |\tilde{X}|^2 \right| &= \left| 2\langle \tilde{X}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{X} \rangle + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{X}) \right| \\ &= \left| \left\langle \tilde{X}, \frac{1}{(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} - \frac{4}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot) \right\rangle + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{X}) \right| \\ &\leq \left| \frac{1}{(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \langle \tilde{X}, \nabla \tilde{R} \rangle \right| + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \left| \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \tilde{X}) \right| \\ &\leq A_1 K_1 (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} |\tilde{X}| + s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} |\tilde{X}|^2) \\ &\leq C_1 (2s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} |\tilde{X}|^2 + (s^{\frac{3p}{1-p}}/4)) \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_0. \end{aligned}$$

where  $A_1 = \max((1-p)^{-2}, 2(1-p)^{-1})$  and  $C_1 = A_1 K_1$ . Hence  $\forall 0 \leq s \leq s_0$ ,

$$(1.17) \quad \begin{cases} \frac{d}{ds} \left( e^{-2C_1(1-p)s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} |\tilde{X}|^2 \right) \leq (C_1/4) e^{-2C_1(1-p)s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} s^{\frac{3p}{1-p}} \\ \frac{d}{ds} \left( e^{2C_1(1-p)s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} |\tilde{X}|^2 \right) \geq -(C_1/4) e^{2C_1(1-p)s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} s^{\frac{3p}{1-p}} \end{cases}$$

$$\Rightarrow e^{-C_2 s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} (|\tilde{v}|^2 - C_3 e^{C_2 s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} s^{\frac{1+2p}{1-p}}) \leq |\tilde{X}(s)|^2 \leq e^{C_2 s^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} (|\tilde{v}|^2 + C_3 s^{\frac{1+2p}{1-p}})$$

where  $C_2 = 2(1-p)C_1$  and  $C_3 = C_2/(8(1+2p))$ . By (1.17) and standard O.D.E. theory there exists a constant  $\varepsilon_0 \in (0, t_0^{1-p} - s_0]$  such that we can extend  $\tilde{\gamma}$  to a solution of (1.10), (1.13), on  $(0, s_0 + \varepsilon_0)$ . This contradicts the maximality of  $s_0$ . Thus (1.14) holds.

If the Ricci curvature of  $M$  is uniformly bounded on  $M \times (0, t_0]$ , then by the local estimates for the solutions of Ricci flow [20] and a similar argument as before we will get a contradiction if  $s_0 < t_0^{1-p}$ . Hence  $s_0 = t_0^{1-p}$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

By Lemma 1.3, Lemma 1.4, and (1.12), we have

**Corollary 1.1.** *For any  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ , there exists a unique solution  $\gamma(\tau) = \gamma_v(\tau) = \gamma(\tau; v)$  of (1.11) in  $(0, \tau_0)$  with*

$$(1.18) \quad \begin{cases} \gamma(0) = p_0 \\ \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} \tau^p \gamma'(\tau) = v. \end{cases}$$

for some constant  $\tau_0 \in (0, t_0^{1-p}]$  where  $(0, \tau_0)$  is the maximal interval of existence of the solution. If  $\tau_0 < t_0^{1-p}$ , then

$$(1.19) \quad \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \tau_0^-} d_0(p_0, \gamma(\tau)) = \infty.$$

If the Ricci curvature of  $M$  is uniformly bounded on  $[0, t_0)$ , then  $\tau_0 = t_0$ .

We will now prove that the  $L_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length can be realized by some  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic in  $M$ . We first recall a lemma of [25]:

**Lemma 1.5** (Lemma 2.1 of [25]). *If there exists a constant  $c_1 > 0$  such that*

$$(1.20) \quad Ric(q, \tau) \geq -c_1 g(q, \tau) \quad \text{on } M \times [0, \bar{\tau}],$$

then

$$e^{-2c_1 \tau} g(0) \leq g(\tau) \leq e^{2c_1(\bar{\tau}-\tau)} g(\bar{\tau}) \quad \text{on } M \times [0, \bar{\tau}].$$

If there exists a constant  $c_2 > 0$  such that

$$(1.21) \quad Ric(q, \tau) \leq c_2 g(q, \tau) \quad \text{on } M \times [0, \bar{\tau}],$$

then

$$e^{2c_2(\tau-\bar{\tau})} g(\bar{\tau}) \leq g(\tau) \leq e^{2c_2 \tau} g(0) \quad \text{on } M \times [0, \bar{\tau}].$$

**Lemma 1.6.** *Suppose there exists a constant  $c_1 > 0$  such that (1.20) holds. Then for any  $\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau})$ ,*

$$(1.22) \quad \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) \geq -\frac{c_1 n}{p+1} \bar{\tau}^{p+1} + \frac{(1-p)e^{-2c_1 \bar{\tau}}}{\tau_2^{1-p} - \tau_1^{1-p}} d_0(\gamma(\tau_1), \gamma(\tau_2))^2 \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 \leq \bar{\tau}.$$

*Proof.* By Lemma 1.5 and the Hölder inequality,

$$(1.23) \quad \begin{aligned} \left( e^{-c_1 \bar{\tau}} \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} |\gamma'(\tau)|_{g(0)} d\tau \right)^2 &\leq \left( \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} |\gamma'(\tau)| d\tau \right)^2 \\ &\leq \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} \tau^p |\gamma'(\tau)|^2 d\tau \cdot \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} \tau^{-p} d\tau \\ &= \frac{\tau_2^{1-p} - \tau_1^{1-p}}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p |\gamma'(\tau)|^2 d\tau \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 \leq \bar{\tau}. \end{aligned}$$

By (1.20),

$$(1.24) \quad \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) d\tau \geq -\frac{c_1 n}{p+1} \bar{\tau}^{p+1}.$$

By (1.23) and (1.24) the lemma follows. □

**Lemma 1.7.** *Let  $r_0 > 0$ . Suppose there exists a constant  $c_2 > 0$  such that (1.21) holds in  $\overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [0, \bar{\tau}]$ . Then*

$$(1.25) \quad L_p(q, \tau) \leq \frac{c_2 n}{p+1} \tau^{p+1} + \frac{e^{2c_2 \tau}}{p+1} \frac{d_0(p_0, q)^2}{\tau^{1-p}} \quad \forall q \in B_0(p_0, r_0), 0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $q \in B_0(p_0, r_0)$ ,  $\tau \in (0, \bar{\tau}]$ , and let  $\gamma : [0, \tau] \rightarrow M$  be a minimizing geodesic joining  $p_0$  and  $q$  with respect to the metric  $g(0)$  with  $|\gamma'|_{g(0)} = d_0(p_0, q)/\tau$  on  $[0, \tau]$ . Then by Lemma 1.5,

$$\begin{aligned} L_p(q, \tau) &\leq \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \tau) \leq \frac{c_2 n}{p+1} \tau^{p+1} + e^{2c_2 \tau} \int_0^\tau \rho^p |\gamma'(\rho)|_{g(0)}^2 d\rho \\ &\leq \frac{c_2 n}{p+1} \tau^{p+1} + \frac{e^{2c_2 \tau}}{p+1} \frac{d_0(p_0, q)^2}{\tau^{1-p}}. \end{aligned}$$

and (1.25) follows. □

**Lemma 1.8.** *Let  $\tilde{\gamma} : [0, \bar{s}] \rightarrow M$  be a continuous curve satisfying*

$$(1.26) \quad \int_0^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2 ds < \infty$$

where  $|\tilde{\gamma}'(s)| = |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|_{\tilde{g}(s)}$  and let  $\tilde{Y}(s) \neq 0$  be a smooth vector field along  $\tilde{\gamma}$ . Then there exists a variation  $f : [0, \bar{s}] \times [-\varepsilon, \varepsilon] \rightarrow M$  of  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with respect to  $\tilde{Y}(s)$  and a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$(1.27) \quad \left| \frac{\partial f}{\partial s}(s, z) \right|^2 + \left| \nabla_z \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial s} \right)(s, z) \right|^2 \leq C(|\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2 + |\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s)|^2)$$

for any  $|z| \leq \varepsilon$  and a.e.  $s \in (0, \bar{s})$  where  $\tilde{X}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s)$  and

$$(1.28) \quad \lim_{z \rightarrow 0} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \frac{\partial f}{\partial s}(s, z), \nabla_z \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial s} \right)(s, z) \right\rangle ds = \int_0^{\bar{s}} \langle \tilde{X}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y} \rangle ds.$$

*Proof.* For any  $s \in [0, \bar{s}]$ , let  $\beta(z, s) = \beta(z, \tilde{\gamma}(s), \tilde{Y}(s))$  be the geodesic with respect to the metric  $\tilde{g}(s)$  which satisfies

$$(1.29) \quad \begin{cases} \beta(0, s) = \tilde{\gamma}(s) \\ \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z}(0, s) = \tilde{Y}(s). \end{cases}$$

Let  $f(s, z) = \beta(z, \tilde{\gamma}(s), \tilde{Y}(s))$ . By the same argument as the proof of Proposition 2.2 of Chapter 9 of [1] there exists a constant  $\varepsilon_0 > 0$  such that for any  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$   $f$  is well defined on  $[0, \bar{s}] \times [-\varepsilon, \varepsilon]$  and is a variation of  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with respect to  $\tilde{Y}(s)$ . We claim that there exists a constant  $0 < \varepsilon < \varepsilon_0$  to be determined later such that  $f$  satisfies (1.27) and (1.28). Since  $f([0, \bar{s}] \times [-\varepsilon, \varepsilon])$  is compact, there exists a finite family of co-ordinate charts  $\{(U_i, \phi_i)\}_{i=1}^{i_0}$  such that  $f([0, \bar{s}] \times [-\varepsilon, \varepsilon]) \subset \cup_{i=1}^{i_0} U_i$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that  $f([0, \bar{s}] \times [-\varepsilon, \varepsilon]) \subset U_1$ . We write  $\beta = (\beta^1, \beta^2, \dots, \beta^n)$ ,  $f = (f^1, f^2, \dots, f^n)$ ,  $\tilde{\gamma}(s) = (a^1(s), a^2(s), \dots, a^n(s))$ , and  $\tilde{Y}(s) = b^i(s)\partial/\partial x_i$  in the local coordinates  $(U_1, \phi_1)$ . Then

$$(1.30) \quad \frac{\partial^2 \beta^k}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial \beta^i}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^j}{\partial z} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^k(\beta(z, s), s) = 0 \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}, k = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Let

$$E(z, s) = \tilde{g}_{kl}(\beta(z, s), s) \frac{\partial \beta^k}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^l}{\partial z}.$$

By (1.29),

$$(1.31) \quad E(0, s) = |\tilde{Y}(s)|^2 \leq \max_{0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}} |\tilde{Y}(s)|^2 = C_1 \quad (\text{say})$$

By (1.30),

$$(1.32) \quad \begin{aligned} \left| \frac{\partial E}{\partial z} \right| &= \left| 2\tilde{g}_{kl} \frac{\partial \beta^l}{\partial z} \frac{\partial^2 \beta^k}{\partial z^2} + \frac{\partial \tilde{g}_{kl}}{\partial x_m} \frac{\partial \beta^m}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^k}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^l}{\partial z} \right| \\ &\leq 2 \left| \tilde{g}_{kl} \frac{\partial \beta^l}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^i}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^j}{\partial z} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^k(\beta(z, s), s) \right| + \left| \frac{\partial \tilde{g}_{kl}}{\partial x_m} \frac{\partial \beta^m}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^k}{\partial z} \frac{\partial \beta^l}{\partial z} \right| \\ &\leq C_2^2 E^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s} \end{aligned}$$

for some constant  $C_2 > 0$ . Let  $\varepsilon = \min(1/(C_1^{\frac{1}{2}} C_2^2), \varepsilon_0)$ . Then by (1.31) and (1.32),

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \frac{1}{\sqrt{E(0, s)}} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{E(z, s)}} \right| \leq \frac{C_2^2}{2}|z| \leq \frac{C_2^2}{2}\varepsilon \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s} \\ \Rightarrow & \frac{1}{\sqrt{E(z, s)}} \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{E(0, s)}} - \frac{C_2^2}{2}\varepsilon \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{C_1}} - \frac{C_2^2}{2}\varepsilon \geq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{C_1}} \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s} \\ (1.33) & \\ \Rightarrow & E(z, s) \leq 4C_1 \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}. \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$w(z, s) = \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial s}$$

and let

$$F(z, s) = |w|^2 + |\nabla_z w|^2.$$

By (1.26),

$$\frac{da^i}{ds} \in L^2(0, \bar{s}) \subset L^1(0, \bar{s}) \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

By standard theory on analysis for any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , there exists a set  $E_i \subset [0, \bar{s}]$  of measure zero such that  $da^i/ds$  is continuous on  $(0, \bar{s}) \setminus E_i$ . Let  $E_0 = \cup_{i=1}^n E_i$  and  $A_0 = (0, \bar{s}) \setminus E_0$ . Then  $|E_0| = 0$  and  $da^i/ds$  is continuous on  $A_0$  for all  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ .

We write  $\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s) = c^i(s)\partial/\partial x_i$  in local coordinates. Then

$$(1.34) \quad c^k(s) = \frac{db^k}{ds} + b^j \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^k(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s) \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}, k = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

By (1.26) and (1.34)  $\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s) \in L^2(0, \bar{s})$  and  $\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s)$  is continuous on  $A_0$ . Differentiating (1.30) and (1.29) with respect to  $s \in A_0$ ,

$$(1.35) \quad 0 = \nabla_s \nabla_z \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} = \nabla_z \nabla_s \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} + \tilde{R} \left( \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial s}, \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \right) \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} = \nabla_z \nabla_z w + \tilde{R} \left( w, \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \right) \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z}$$

holds for any  $|z| \leq \varepsilon, s \in A_0, k = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and

$$(1.36) \quad \begin{cases} w(0, s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s) & \forall s \in A_0 \\ \nabla_z w(0, s) = \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s) & \forall s \in A_0. \end{cases}$$

Then by (1.33), (1.35), (1.36), and Hölder's inequality,

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{\partial F}{\partial z} \right| &= 2 \left| \langle w, \nabla_z w \rangle + \langle \nabla_z w, \nabla_z \nabla_z w \rangle \right| \\ &\leq F + 2 \left| \langle \nabla_z w, \tilde{R} \left( w, \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \right) \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \rangle \right| \\ &\leq F + |\nabla_z w|^2 + \left| \tilde{R} \left( w, \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \right) \frac{\partial \beta}{\partial z} \right|^2 \\ &\leq C_3 F \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, s \in A_0 \\ \Rightarrow & F(z, s) \leq e^{C_3 z} F(0, s) \leq e^{C_3 \varepsilon} (|\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2 + |\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}|^2) \end{aligned}$$

holds for any  $|z| \leq \varepsilon$  and  $s \in A_0$  where  $C_3 > 0$  is a constant. Hence (1.27) follows. By (1.27) and the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$(1.37) \quad \left| \left\langle \frac{\partial f}{\partial s}(s, z), \nabla_z \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial s} \right)(s, z) \right\rangle \right| \leq C(|\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2 + |\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}|^2) \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, s \in A_0.$$

Since both  $\gamma'(s)$  and  $\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}$  are continuous at  $s$  for any  $s \in A_0$ , by (1.35), (1.36), and the continuous dependence of solutions of O.D.E. on initial data,  $\nabla_z w$  is continuous at  $(z, s)$  for any  $s \in A_0$  and  $|z| \leq \varepsilon$ . Hence

$$(1.38) \quad \nabla_z \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial s} \right)(s, z) = \nabla_s \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial z} \right)(s, z) \quad \forall |z| \leq \varepsilon, s \in A_0.$$

Since by (1.38)

$$\left\langle \frac{\partial f}{\partial s}(s, z), \nabla_z \left( \frac{\partial f}{\partial s} \right)(s, z) \right\rangle \rightarrow \langle \tilde{X}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y} \rangle \quad \text{as } z \rightarrow 0 \quad \forall s \in A_0,$$

by (1.37) and the Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem (1.28) follows.  $\square$

**Theorem 1.1.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $q \in M$ , there exists a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^1([0, \bar{s}]) \cap C^\infty((0, \bar{s}])$  such that  $\tilde{\gamma}(0) = p_0$ ,  $\tilde{\gamma}(\bar{s}) = q$ , and*

$$(1.39) \quad \tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s}) = \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}).$$

*Proof.* Choose a sequence of curves  $\{\tilde{\gamma}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \subset \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{s})$  such that

$$(1.40) \quad \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}_i, \bar{s}) \leq \tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s}) + 1 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$$

and

$$(1.41) \quad \tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s}) = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}_i, \bar{s}).$$

Let  $\gamma_i(\tau) = \tilde{\gamma}_i(s)$ ,  $\tau = s^{1/(1-p)}$ . By Lemma 1.6, (1.4), (1.6) and (1.41) there exist constants  $K = K(\bar{\tau}, L_p(q, \bar{\tau})) > 0$  and  $C_1 > 0$  independent of  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that

$$(1.42) \quad \begin{cases} d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}_i(s)) \leq K & \forall 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \\ d_0(\tilde{\gamma}_i(s), \tilde{\gamma}_i(s')) \leq C_1 |s - s'|^{1/2} & \forall s, s' \in [0, \bar{s}], i \in \mathbb{Z}^+. \end{cases}$$

Hence the sequence of curves  $\{\tilde{\gamma}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  are uniformly Hölder continuous on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . Since  $M$  is complete with respect to  $g(0)$ ,  $\overline{B_0(p_0, K)}$  is compact. By the Ascoli Theorem there exists a continuous curve  $\tilde{\gamma} : [0, \bar{s}] \rightarrow \overline{B_0(p_0, K)}$  such that  $\tilde{\gamma}_i$  converges uniformly to  $\tilde{\gamma}$  on  $[0, \bar{s}]$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . Then  $\tilde{\gamma}(0) = p_0$  and  $\tilde{\gamma}(\bar{s}) = q$ . Letting  $i \rightarrow \infty$  in (1.42),

$$\begin{cases} d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s)) \leq K & \forall 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s} \\ d_0(\tilde{\gamma}(s), \tilde{\gamma}(s')) \leq C_1 |s - s'|^{1/2} & \forall s, s' \in [0, \bar{s}]. \end{cases}$$

Hence  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is uniformly Hölder continuous on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . By Fatou's Lemma and Lemma 1.5,

$$(1.43) \quad \begin{aligned} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) &\leq \liminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}_i, \bar{s}) = \tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s}) \\ \Rightarrow \tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s}) &= \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) \quad \text{and} \quad |\tilde{\gamma}'|_{g(0)} \in L^2(0, \bar{s}). \end{aligned}$$

We now claim that  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^\infty([0, \bar{s}])$ . Since  $\overline{B_0(p_0, K)}$  is compact, there exists a finite family of co-ordinate charts  $\{(\phi_k, B_0(q_k, r_k))\}_{k=1}^{k_0}$  such that  $\overline{B_0(p_0, K)} \subset \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} B_0(q_k, r_k)$ . Let

$$I_k = I_k(\tilde{\gamma}) = \{s \in [0, \bar{s}] : \tilde{\gamma}(s) \in B_0(q_k, r_k)\} \quad \forall k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0.$$

Then  $I_k$  is relatively open with respect to the interval  $[0, \bar{s}]$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0$  and  $[0, \bar{s}] = \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} I_k$ . For any  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0$ ,  $s \in I_k$ , we write

$$\phi_k(\tilde{\gamma}(s)) = (a_k^1(s), a_k^2(s), \dots, a_k^n(s))$$

in the local coordinates  $(\phi_k, B_0(q_k, r_k))$ . When there is no ambiguity, we will drop the subscript  $k$ . To prove the claim we fix one  $k \in \{1, 2, \dots, k_0\}$ . Then

$$\tilde{X}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s) = \frac{da^i}{ds} \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i} \quad \text{in } I_k.$$

By (1.43),

$$(1.44) \quad \tilde{g}_{ij}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), 0) \frac{da^i}{ds} \frac{da^j}{ds} \in L^1(I_k) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \frac{da^i}{ds} \in L^2(I_k) \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Let

$$\tilde{Y}(s) = b^j(s) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j}$$

be a smooth vector field along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  such that  $\tilde{Y}(s) = 0$  for any  $s \notin I_k$ . Since  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is a minimizer of  $\tilde{L}_p(q, \bar{s})$  and by (1.43)  $\tilde{\gamma}$  satisfies (1.26), by Lemma 1.8, Lebesgue dominated convergence theorem and an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 1.2,

$$(1.45) \quad \begin{aligned} &\int_0^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{Y}(\tilde{R}) + 2(1-p)^2 \langle \tilde{X}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y} \rangle) ds = 0 \\ \Rightarrow &\int_{I_k} \left\{ s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} b^j \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x^j} + 2(1-p)^2 \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \left( \frac{db^r}{ds} + b^j \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) \right\} ds = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$(1.46) \quad \begin{aligned} &\Rightarrow \left| \int_{I_k} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \left( \frac{db^r}{ds} + b^j \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) ds \right| \leq C \left| \int_{I_k} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} b^j \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x^j} ds \right| \\ \Rightarrow &\left| \int_{I_k} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{db^r}{ds} ds \right| \leq \left| \int_{I_k} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} b^j \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r ds \right| + C \sum_{j=1}^n \int_{I_k} |b^j| ds. \end{aligned}$$

Since by (1.44) and the Cauchy-Schwarz inequality,

$$\left| \int_{I_k} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} b^j \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r ds \right| \leq C \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} \|b^j\|_\infty \int_J \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds$$

where  $J = \cup_{j=1}^n \text{supp } b^j$ , by (1.46) we have

$$(1.47) \quad \left| \int_{I_k} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{db^r}{ds} ds \right| \leq C \max_{1 \leq j \leq n} \|b^j\|_\infty \int_J \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C \sum_{j=1}^n \int_{I_k} |b^j| ds.$$

We now choose  $\phi \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $0 \leq \phi \leq 1$ , such that  $\phi(s) = 1$  for all  $s \leq 0$  and  $\phi(s) = 0$  for all  $s \geq 1$ . For any  $h > 0$  let  $\phi_h(s) = \phi(s/h)$ . Since

$$\int_{\mathbb{R}} \phi'(s) ds = -1,$$

by (1.44) and standard theory in analysis [22] there exists a set  $E_k \subset I_k$  of measure zero such that

$$(1.48) \quad \begin{cases} \lim_{h \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{h} \int_{s'-h}^{s'} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s) \phi'((s' - s)/h) ds = -\frac{da^1}{ds}(s') & \forall s' \in I_k \setminus E_k \\ \lim_{h \rightarrow 0^+} \frac{1}{h} \int_{s'}^{s'+h} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s) \phi'((s - s')/h) ds = -\frac{da^1}{ds}(s') & \forall s' \in I_k \setminus E_k. \end{cases}$$

Let  $s'_0 \in I_k \setminus E_k$ . Without loss of generality we may assume that  $s'_0 \neq 0, \bar{s}$ . By continuity of  $\tilde{\gamma}$  there exists a constant  $0 < \varepsilon \leq s'_0/2$  such that

$$\tilde{\gamma}(s) \in B_0(q_k, r_k) \quad \forall s \in I_\varepsilon(s'_0) = (s'_0 - \varepsilon, s'_0 + \varepsilon) \subset I_k.$$

Let  $s_1, s_2 \in I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0) \setminus E_k$  be such that  $s_1 < s_2$  and let  $\varepsilon_1 = (s_2 - s_1)/3$ . Putting

$$b^r(s) = \tilde{g}^{r1}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s) \phi_{h_2}(s - s_2) \phi_{h_1}(s_1 - s) \quad \forall r = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

in (1.47) where  $0 < h_1, h_2 \leq \varepsilon_1$  we get



$$\begin{aligned}
 & \left| \frac{1}{h_2} \int_{s_2}^{s_2+h_2} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s) \phi'((s-s_2)/h_2) ds - \frac{1}{h_1} \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_1} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s) \phi'((s_1-s)/h_1) ds \right| \\
 & \leq C \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2) \\
 & \quad + \left| \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{d\tilde{g}^{r1}}{ds} \frac{da^l}{ds} \phi_{h_2}(s-s_2) \phi_{h_1}(s_1-s) ds \right| \\
 & \leq C \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2) \\
 & \quad + \left| \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \left( \frac{\partial \tilde{g}^{r1}}{\partial s} + \frac{\partial \tilde{g}^{r1}}{\partial x_j} \frac{da^j}{ds} \right) \frac{da^l}{ds} \phi_{h_2}(s-s_2) \phi_{h_1}(s_1-s) ds \right| \\
 & \leq C \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2) \\
 & \quad + \frac{2}{1-p} \left| \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} s^{\frac{-p}{1-p}} \tilde{g}_{ri} \tilde{g}^{ri} \tilde{R}_{ij} \tilde{g}^{j1} \frac{da^l}{ds} \phi_{h_2}(s-s_2) \phi_{h_1}(s_1-s) ds \right| \quad (\text{by (1.8)}) \\
 & \leq C \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2) \\
 & \quad + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2)^{1/2} \left( \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds \right)^{1/2} \\
 (1.49) \quad & \leq C \int_{s_1-h_1}^{s_2+h_2} \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^r}{ds} ds + C(s_2 - s_1 + h_1 + h_2).
 \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $h_1 \rightarrow 0$  in (1.49), by (1.26), (1.44), and (1.48),

$$(1.50) \quad \left| \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_1) \right| \leq C \quad \forall s_1 \in I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0) \setminus E_k.$$

for some constant  $C > 0$ . Hence letting  $h_1, h_2 \rightarrow 0$  in (1.49), by (1.26), (1.48), and (1.50) we have

$$(1.51) \quad \left| \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_2) - \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_1) \right| \leq C |s_2 - s_1| \quad \forall s_1, s_2 \in I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0) \setminus E_k.$$

We now choose  $0 \leq \eta \in C_0^\infty(\mathbb{R})$  such that  $\eta(s) = 0$  for any  $|s| \geq 1$  and  $\int_{\mathbb{R}} \eta ds = 1$ . For any  $h > 0$ ,  $s_0 \in I_k$ , let  $\eta_h(s) = \eta(s/h)/h$  and

$$a^1 * \eta_h(s_0) = \int_{\mathbb{R}} a^1(s_0 - s) \eta_h(s) ds.$$

For any  $s_0 \in I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$ , we choose a sequence  $\{s_{0,i}\}_{i=1}^\infty \subset I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0) \setminus E_k$  such that  $\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} s_{0,i} = s_0$ . By (1.51)  $\{da^1(s_{0,i})/ds\}_{i=1}^\infty$  is a Cauchy sequence. Hence

$$\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i})$$

exists. Let

$$f(s_0) = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i}) \quad \forall s_0 \in I_\varepsilon(s'_0).$$

By (1.51)  $f$  is well defined on  $I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$ . We now claim that  $a^1 \in C^1(I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0))$  with  $da^1/ds = f$  on  $I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$ . To prove the claim we observe that by (1.51)

$$\begin{aligned} & \left| \frac{d}{ds} a^1 * \eta_h(s_0) - f(s_0) \right| \\ &= \left| \int_{|\rho| \leq h} \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_0 - \rho) \eta_h(\rho) d\rho - f(s_0) \right| \\ &\leq \left| \int_{|\rho| \leq h} \left( \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_0 - \rho) - \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i}) \right) \eta_h(\rho) d\rho \right| + \left| \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i}) - f(s_0) \right| \\ &\leq C \int_{|\rho| \leq h} |s_0 - \rho - s_{0,i}| \eta_h(\rho) d\rho + \left| \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i}) - f(s_0) \right| \\ &\leq C(|s_0 - s_{0,i}| + h) + \left| \frac{da^1}{ds}(s_{0,i}) - f(s_0) \right|. \end{aligned}$$

Letting first  $i \rightarrow \infty$  and then  $h \rightarrow 0$  in the above inequality, we get that  $d(a^1 * \eta_h)/ds$  converges uniformly to  $f$  on  $I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Since  $a^1 * \eta_h$  converges uniformly to  $a^1$  on  $I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$  as  $h \rightarrow 0$ . Hence  $a^1 \in C^1(I_\varepsilon(s'_0))$  with  $da^1/ds = f$  on  $I_{\varepsilon/2}(s'_0)$ . Since  $s'_0$  is arbitrary,  $a^1 \in C^1([0, \bar{s}])$ . By a similar argument  $a^l \in C^1([0, \bar{s}])$  for any  $l = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Hence  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^1([0, \bar{s}])$  and there exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$(1.52) \quad \left| \frac{da_k^l}{ds}(s_2) - \frac{da_k^l}{ds}(s_1) \right| \leq C|s_2 - s_1| \quad \forall s_1, s_2 \in I_k, k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0, l = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Thus  $d^2 a_k^l(s)/ds^2$  exists a.e.  $s \in I_k$  with

$$\frac{d^2 a_k^l}{ds^2} \in L^\infty(I_k) \quad \forall k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0, l = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

By (1.45) for any  $b^j \in C_0^\infty(I_k)$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,

$$(1.53) \quad \int_{I_k} \left\{ s^{2p/(1-p)} \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x_j} + 2(1-p)^2 \left( -\frac{d}{ds} \left( \tilde{g}_{jl} \frac{da^l}{ds} \right) + \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) \right\} b^j ds = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 2(1-p)^2 \left( -\frac{d}{ds} \left( \tilde{g}_{jl} \frac{da^l}{ds} \right) + \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) + s^{2p/(1-p)} \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x_j} = 0$$

for a.e.  $s \in I_k$ . Hence

$$2(1-p)^2 \left( -\tilde{g}_{jl} \frac{d^2 a^l}{ds^2} - \frac{d\tilde{g}_{jl}}{ds} \frac{da^l}{ds} + \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) + s^{2p/(1-p)} \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x_j} = 0$$

for a.e.  $s \in I_k$ . Thus

$$(1.54) \quad \frac{d^2 a^m}{ds^2} = -\tilde{g}^{mj} \frac{d\tilde{g}_{jl}}{ds} \frac{da^l}{ds} + \tilde{g}_{lr} \tilde{g}^{mj} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r + \frac{1}{(1-p)^2} s^{2p/(1-p)} \tilde{g}^{mj} \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x_j}$$

a.e.  $s \in I_k$ . By (1.52) and (1.54) there exists a set  $E'_k$  of measure zero such that

$$(1.55) \quad \left| \frac{d^2 a_k^j}{ds^2}(s_2) - \frac{d^2 a_k^j}{ds^2}(s_1) \right| \leq C |s_2 - s_1|$$

for any  $s_1, s_2 \in I_\varepsilon(s'_0) \setminus E'_k$ ,  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0$  and  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . By an argument similar to the proof of  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^1([0, \bar{s}])$  but with (1.55) replacing (1.51) in the proof we get that  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^2([0, \bar{s}])$  and

$$\left| \frac{d^2 a_k^j}{ds^2}(s_2) - \frac{d^2 a_k^j}{ds^2}(s_1) \right| \leq C |s_2 - s_1| \quad \forall s_1, s_2 \in I_k, k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

for some constant  $C > 0$ . Hence by (1.53),

$$2(1-p)^2 \left( -\frac{d}{ds} \left( \tilde{g}_{jl} \frac{da^l}{ds} \right) + \tilde{g}_{lr} \frac{da^l}{ds} \frac{da^i}{ds} \tilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) + s^{2p/(1-p)} \frac{\partial \tilde{R}}{\partial x_j} = 0 \quad \text{in } I_k$$

for any  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . Thus  $\tilde{\gamma}$  satisfies (1.10) in  $(0, \bar{s})$ . Then by standard O.D.E. theory  $\tilde{\gamma} \in C^\infty((0, \bar{s}])$ . Hence  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic and the theorem follows. □

By (1.4), (1.5), (1.6) and Theorem 1.1 we have

**Theorem 1.2.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $q \in M$ , there exists a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma \in C([0, \bar{\tau}]) \cap C^\infty((0, \bar{\tau}))$  satisfying (1.18) for some  $v \in T_{p_0}M$  such that  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$  and*

$$L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}).$$

By putting  $p = 1/2$  in Theorem 1.2 we obtain a result which is mentioned and used without proof in Perelman's paper [18], [19].

**Corollary 1.2.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $q \in M$ , there exists a  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic  $\gamma \in C([0, \bar{\tau}]) \cap C^\infty((0, \bar{\tau}))$  satisfying (1.18) with  $p = 1/2$  for some  $v \in T_{p_0}M$  such that  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$  and*

$$L(q, \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}).$$

By an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 1.1 and Theorem 1.2 we have

**Theorem 1.3.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Let  $q_0 \in M$  and let  $\tau_0 \in (0, \bar{\tau})$ . Then for any  $q \in M$ , there exists a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma \in C^\infty([\tau_0, \bar{\tau}])$  satisfying  $\gamma(\tau_0) = q_0$ ,  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ , and*

$$L_p^{q_0, \tau_0}(q, \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}_p^{q_0, \tau_0}(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}).$$

**Theorem 1.4.** *Let  $t_0 > 0$ ,  $s_0 = t_0^{1-p}$ , and let  $g$  and  $\bar{g}$  be related by (0.5). Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $\bar{s} \in (0, s_0)$ ,  $q \in M$ ,  $\tilde{L}_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{s})$  is locally Lipschitz in  $p_0$  with respect to the metric  $g(0) = \bar{g}(t_0)$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $r_0 > 0$ ,  $\bar{s} \in (0, s_0)$ ,  $\bar{\tau} = \frac{1}{\bar{s}^{1-p}}$ ,  $\bar{p}_0 \in M$ , and let  $p_1, p_2 \in B_0(\bar{p}_0, r_0)$ . By Theorem 1.1 for each  $i = 1, 2$ , there exists a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p^{p_i}(q, \bar{s})$ -length minimizing  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic  $\tilde{\gamma}_i : [0, \bar{s}] \rightarrow M$  such that  $\tilde{\gamma}_i(0) = p_i$  and  $\tilde{\gamma}_i(\bar{s}) = q$ . Let  $\tilde{\gamma} : [0, d] \rightarrow M$  be a normalized minimizing geodesic with respect to the metric  $g(0)$  with  $\tilde{\gamma}(0) = p_1$ ,  $\tilde{\gamma}(d) = p_2$ ,  $|\tilde{\gamma}'| = |\tilde{\gamma}'|_{g(0)} = 1$  on  $[0, d]$  with  $d = d_0(p_1, p_2)$ . Then  $\tilde{\gamma}([0, d]) \subset B_0(\bar{p}_0, 3r_0)$ . Let  $r_1 = 3r_0 + 2d_0(\bar{p}_0, q)$  and let

$$K_0 = \sup_{B_0(\bar{p}_0, r_1) \times [0, \bar{\tau}]} (|R| + |\text{Ric}|).$$

Let  $\gamma_i(\tau) = \tilde{\gamma}_i(s)$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ ,  $i = 1, 2$ . For  $i = 1, 2$ , let  $d_i = d_0(p_i, q)$  and let  $\bar{\gamma}_i : [0, d_i] \rightarrow M$  be a normalized minimizing geodesic with respect to the metric  $g(0)$  with  $\bar{\gamma}_i(0) = p_i$ ,  $\bar{\gamma}_i(d_i) = q$ . Then  $d_i < r_0 + d_0(\bar{p}_0, q)$  and  $\bar{\gamma}_i([0, d_i]) \subset B_0(p_0, r_1)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . Hence by Lemma 1.6 and the proof of Lemma 1.7, there exist constants  $A_1 = A_1(\bar{s}, r_1, K_0) > 0$  and  $r_2 = r_2(\bar{s}, r_1, K_0) \geq r_1$  such that

$$\begin{cases} \tilde{L}_p^{p_i}(q, \bar{s}) \leq A_1 & \forall i = 1, 2 \\ d_0(p_i, \tilde{\gamma}_i(s)) < r_2 & \forall 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}, i = 1, 2. \end{cases}$$

Let

$$K_1 = \sup_{B_0(p_0, 2r_2) \times [0, \bar{\tau}]} (|R| + |R_t| + |\nabla R| + |\text{Ric}|).$$

We now assume that  $d = d_0(p_1, p_2) < \min(1, \bar{s}/4)$ . Let

$$\beta(s) = \begin{cases} \tilde{\gamma}(s) & \text{if } 0 \leq s < d \\ \tilde{\gamma}_2(s - d) & \text{if } d \leq s \leq \bar{s} - d \\ \tilde{\gamma}_2(2s - \bar{s}) & \text{if } \bar{s} - d < s \leq \bar{s}. \end{cases}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 \tilde{L}_p^{p_1}(q, \bar{s}) &\leq \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p^{p_1}(q, \beta, \bar{s}) \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^d (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}(s), s) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|^2) ds \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_d^{\bar{s}-d} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(s'), s) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s')|_{\tilde{g}(s)}^2) ds \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_{\bar{s}-d}^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(s''), s) + 4(1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s'')|_{\tilde{g}(s)}^2) ds \\
 (1.56) \quad &= I_1 + I_2 + I_3
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $s' = s - d$  and  $s'' = 2s - \bar{s}$ . By Lemma 1.5,

$$(1.57) \quad I_1 \leq \frac{K_1}{1+p} d^{\frac{1+p}{1-p}} + (1-p)e^{2K_1 d^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} d \leq \frac{K_1}{1+p} d^{\frac{1+p}{1-p}} + (1-p)e^{2K_1 d},$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_2 &\leq \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} ((w+d)^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w+d) + (1-p)^2 e^{2K_1 d^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(w)|^2) dw \\
 &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} (w^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(w)|^2) dw \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} [(w+d)^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} - w^{\frac{2p}{1-p}}] \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w+d) dw \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} w^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} (\tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w+d) - \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w)) dw \\
 &\quad + (1-p)(e^{2K_1 d^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} - 1) \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(w)|^2 dw \\
 (1.58) \quad &\leq \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}-2d} (w^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(w), w) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(w)|^2) dw + C'_1 d
 \end{aligned}$$

for some constant  $C'_1 > 0$  and

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_3 &\leq \frac{1}{1-p} K_1 \bar{s}^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} d + 2(1-p)e^{2K_1 d^{\frac{1}{1-p}}} \int_{\bar{s}-2d}^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2 ds \\
 &\leq \frac{1}{1-p} \int_{\bar{s}-2d}^{\bar{s}} (s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(s), s) + (1-p)^2 |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2) ds + C''_1 \int_{\bar{s}-2d}^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2 ds \\
 (1.59) \quad &+ \frac{3K_1}{1-p} \bar{s}^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} d.
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence by (1.56), (1.57), (1.58) and (1.59),

$$(1.60) \quad \tilde{L}_p^{p_1}(q, \bar{s}) \leq \tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s}) + C_1'' \int_{\bar{s}-2d}^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2 ds + C_2'd$$

for some constant  $C_2' > 0$ . Let  $\tilde{v}_i = \tilde{\gamma}'_i(0)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 1.4, (1.17) holds in  $(0, \bar{s})$  for some constant  $C_2 > 0$ ,  $C_3 > 0$ , depending only on  $K_1$  with  $\tilde{X}(s)$  and  $\tilde{v}$ , being replaced by  $\tilde{\gamma}'_i(s)$  and  $\tilde{v}_i = \tilde{\gamma}'_i(0)$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ . By (1.17) there exist constants  $C_4 > 0$ ,  $C_5 > 0$  and  $C_6 > 0$  such that

$$(1.61) \quad C_4|\tilde{v}_i|^2 - C_5 \leq |\tilde{\gamma}'_i(s)|^2 \leq C_6(1 + |\tilde{v}_i|^2) \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}, i = 1, 2.$$

By (1.61),

$$\begin{aligned} C_4\bar{s}|\tilde{v}_2|^2 &= C_4 \int_0^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{v}_2|^2 ds \leq C_5\bar{s} + \int_0^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2 ds \\ &\leq C_5\bar{s} + \frac{1}{1-p} \left[ \tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s}) - \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \tilde{R}(\tilde{\gamma}_2(s), s) ds \right] \\ &\leq C_5\bar{s} + \frac{1}{1-p} \left( \tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s}) + \frac{K_1}{1+p} \bar{s}^{\frac{1+p}{1-p}} \right) \\ (1.62) \quad &\leq C_5\bar{s} + \frac{1}{1-p} \left( A_1 + \frac{K_1}{1+p} \bar{s}^{\frac{1+p}{1-p}} \right) = C_7 \quad (\text{say}). \end{aligned}$$

By (1.61) and (1.62),

$$(1.63) \quad \int_{\bar{s}-2d}^{\bar{s}} |\tilde{\gamma}'_2(s)|^2 ds \leq 2C_6(1 + |\tilde{v}_2|^2)d \leq 2C_6(1 + (C_7/(C_4\bar{s}))d.$$

By (1.60) and (1.63) there exists a constant  $C_8 = C_8 > 0$  such that

$$\tilde{L}_p^{p_1}(q, \bar{s}) \leq \tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s}) + C_8d.$$

Interchanging the role of  $p_1$  and  $p_2$  in the above inequality,

$$\tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s}) \leq \tilde{L}_p^{p_1}(q, \bar{s}) + C_8d.$$

Hence

$$|\tilde{L}_p^{p_1}(q, \bar{s}) - \tilde{L}_p^{p_2}(q, \bar{s})| \leq C_8d_0(p_1, p_2)$$

for any  $p_1, p_2 \in B_0(\bar{p}_0, r_0)$  and  $d_0(p_1, p_2) > \min(1, \bar{s}/4)$  and the theorem follows.  $\square$

By (1.6) and Theorem 1.4 we have the following theorem.

**Theorem 1.5.** *Let  $t_0 > 0$  and let  $g$  and  $\bar{g}$  be related by (0.5). Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ ,  $q \in M$ ,  $L_p^{p_0}(q, \bar{\tau})$  is locally Lipschitz in  $p_0$  with respect to the metric  $g(0) = \bar{g}(t_0)$ .*

## 2. Properties of the $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map and $\mathcal{L}_p$ cut locus

In this section we will generalize the  $\mathcal{L}$ -exponential map of Perelman [18] and define the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map corresponding to the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic curve. We will also derive some elementary properties of the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map.

We first start with a definition. Let  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ . For any  $v \in T_{p_0}M$  let  $\tilde{v} = v/(1 - p)$ . By Lemma 1.4 there exists a unique solution  $\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v})$  of (1.10), (1.13), in  $(0, s_0)$  for some  $s_0 > 0$ . Let  $\gamma_v(\tau) = \gamma(\tau; v) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v})$  where  $s$  and  $\tau$  are related by (1.5). Then  $\gamma_v$  is the unique solution of (1.11), (1.18), in  $(0, \tau_0)$  where  $\tau_0 = s_0^{1/(1-p)}$ . Similar to [25] for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$  we let

$$U_p(\bar{\tau}) = \{v \in T_{p_0}M : \gamma_v \text{ exists on } (0, \tau_0) \text{ for some } \tau_0 > \bar{\tau}\}.$$

Then  $U_p(\tau_2) \subset U_p(\tau_1)$  for any  $0 < \tau_1 < \tau_2 < t_0$ . We define the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -exponential map  $\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}} : U_p(\bar{\tau}) \rightarrow M$  by

$$\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}(v) = \gamma_v(\bar{\tau}) = \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(\bar{\tau}^{1-p}).$$

By O.D.E. theory and the equivalence of the O.D.E. (1.10), (1.13), and (1.11), (1.18), through the transformation (1.5),  $U_p(\bar{\tau})$  is open in  $T_{p_0}M$ . Note that by Corollary 1.1 if  $(M, g)$  has uniformly bounded Ricci curvature on  $M \times (0, t_0)$ , then  $U_p(\bar{\tau}) = T_{p_0}M$  for any  $0 \leq \bar{\tau} < t_0$ .

Let  $q_0 \in M$ ,  $\tau_0 \in (0, t_0)$  and  $v \in T_{q_0}M$ . By an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 1.4 and Corollary 1.1 there exists a unique solution  $\gamma_{\tau_0, v}^{q_0}(\tau) = \gamma_{\tau_0}^{q_0}(\tau; v)$  of (1.11) in  $(\tau_0, \tau_1)$  for some  $\tau_1 > \tau_0$  such that

$$\begin{cases} \gamma_{\tau_0}^{q_0}(\tau_0; v) = q_0 \\ \tau_0^p \gamma_{\tau_0}^{q_0 \prime}(\tau_0; v) = v. \end{cases}$$

For any  $\bar{\tau} > \tau_0$ , let

$$U_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau}) = \{v \in T_{q_0}M : \gamma_{\tau_0, v}^{q_0} \text{ exists on } (\tau_0, \tau_1) \text{ for some } \tau_1 > \bar{\tau}\}.$$

We define the  $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}$ -exponential map  $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}\text{-exp}^{\bar{\tau}} : U_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau}) \rightarrow M$  by

$$\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0, p}^{q_0}\text{-exp}^{\bar{\tau}}(v) = \gamma_{\tau_0}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau}; v).$$

**Lemma 2.1.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $[0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $r_0 > 0$  and  $m_0 > 0$ , there exists a constant  $s_1 \in (0, t_0^{1-p})$  such that for any  $\tilde{v} \in T_{p_0}M$  satisfying  $|\tilde{v}|_{g(p_0, 0)} \leq m_0$  there exists a unique  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic  $\tilde{\gamma} = \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}} : [0, s_1] \rightarrow M$  satisfying (1.13) and*

$$(2.1) \quad \tilde{\gamma}(s) \in B_0(p_0, r_0) \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_1.$$

Hence  $\mathcal{B}(0, (1 - p)m_0) \subset U_p(\tau)$  for any  $0 < \tau \leq \tau_1$  where  $\tau_1 = s_1^{\frac{1}{1-p}}$  and

$$\bigcup_{0 < \tau < t_0} U_p(\tau) = T_{p_0}M.$$

*Proof.* We will use an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.5 of [25] to prove the lemma. Let  $\tilde{v} \in T_{p_0}M$  satisfy  $|\tilde{v}|_{g(p_0,0)} \leq m_0$ . Since  $M$  is complete,  $\overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)}$  is compact. Then there exists a constant  $K_1 > 0$  such that (1.16) holds for any  $(q, \tau) \in \overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [0, t_0/2]$ . Let  $C_2 = C_2(K_1) > 0$  and  $C_3 > 0$  be as in the proof of Lemma 1.4. Let

$$s'_1 = \min(1, (t_0/2)^{1-p}, e^{-c_1-(C_2/2)}(m_0^2 + C_3)^{-1/2}r_0/2)$$

and  $s_1 = s'_1/2$ . By Lemma 1.4 there exists a maximal interval  $[0, \bar{s})$  such that there exists a unique  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic  $\tilde{\gamma} : [0, \bar{s}) \rightarrow M$  which satisfies (1.13). We claim that  $\bar{s} \geq s'_1$ . Suppose not. Then  $\bar{s} < s'_1$ . Let

$$s_0 = \sup\{s' \leq \bar{s} : \tilde{\gamma}(s) \in B_0(p_0, r_0) \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s'\}.$$

Suppose  $s_0 < \bar{s}$ . By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 1.4 (1.17) holds in  $(0, s_0)$ . Hence by (1.17) and Lemma 1.5,

$$\begin{aligned} e^{-c_1}d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s_0)) &\leq e^{-c_1} \int_0^{s_0} |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)|_{g(0)} ds \leq \int_0^{s_0} |\tilde{\gamma}'(s)| ds \\ &\leq e^{C_2/2}(m_0^2 + C_3)^{1/2}s_0 \\ \Rightarrow d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s_0)) &\leq e^{c_1+(C_2/2)}(m_0^2 + C_3)^{1/2}s'_1 < r_0. \end{aligned}$$

By continuity there exists  $s_2 \in (s_0, \bar{s}]$  such that

$$d_0(p_0, \tilde{\gamma}(s)) < r_0 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2.$$

This contradicts the choice of  $s_0$ . Hence  $s_0 = \bar{s}$ . Then (1.17) holds on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . Thus by (1.17) we can extend  $\tilde{\gamma}$  to a solution of (1.10), (1.13), in  $(0, \bar{s} + \delta)$  for some  $\delta \in (0, s'_1 - \bar{s})$ . Contradiction arises. Hence  $\bar{s} \geq s'_1$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

**Theorem 2.1.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $[0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then there exists a constant  $\bar{\tau}_0 \in (0, t_0)$  such that for any  $0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_0$  there exist a constant  $r_1 > 0$  and an open set  $O_1 \subset M$  with  $p_0 \in O_1$  such that  $\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}|_{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)} : \mathcal{B}(0, r_1) \rightarrow O_1$  is a diffeomorphism.*

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of Proposition 2.6 of [25] to prove the lemma. Let  $(\phi_0, B_0(p_0, r_0))$  be a local normal co-ordinate chart around  $p_0$ . By Lemma 2.1 there exists a constant  $s_1 \in (0, t_0^{1-p})$  such that  $\mathcal{B}(0, 1) \subset U_p(\tau)$  for any  $0 < \tau \leq \tau_1 = s_1^{\frac{1}{1-p}}$  and (2.1) holds for any  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies (1.13) with  $|\tilde{v}| \leq 1$ . By the inverse function theorem it suffices to check that the kernel of  $d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_0$  is equal to zero for sufficiently small  $\bar{\tau}$ . Suppose not. Then there exists  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, \bar{\tau}_0)$  and  $0 \neq v_0 \in T_0(T_{p_0}M) = T_{p_0}M$  such that

$$(2.2) \quad d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_0(v_0) = 0$$



where  $\bar{\tau}_0 \in (0, \tau_1)$  is some constant to be determined later in the proof. Let  $\tilde{v}_0 = v_0/(1-p)$  and  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . By rescaling  $v_0$  if necessary we may assume without loss of generality that  $|\tilde{v}_0|_{g(p_0,0)} = 1$ . Then  $|v_0|_{g(p_0,0)} = 1-p$ . For any  $0 \leq z \leq 1$ , let

$$h(s, z) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; z\tilde{v}_0)$$

be the solution of (1.10), (1.13), in  $[0, s_1]$  with  $\tilde{v}$  being replaced by  $z\tilde{v}_0$  given by Lemma 2.1. Then  $h$  is a variation of  $\tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v}_0)$  with  $h(s, 1) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v}_0)$ . Let

$$Y(s, z) = \frac{\partial h}{\partial z}(s, z), \bar{Y}(s) = Y(s, 0) \text{ and } \tilde{X}(s) = \frac{\partial h}{\partial s}(s, 0).$$

We write  $\tilde{X}(s) = a^i(s)\partial/\partial x_i$  and  $\bar{Y}(s) = b^j(s)\partial/\partial x_j$  in the local co-ordinates  $(\phi_0, B_0(p_0, r_0))$ . By (2.2),

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \frac{d}{dz} \Big|_{z=0} \mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}(z v_0) = \frac{d}{dz} \Big|_{z=0} \tilde{\gamma}(\bar{s}; z\tilde{v}_0) = Y(\bar{s}, 0) = \bar{Y}(\bar{s}) \\ (2.3) \quad \Rightarrow \quad b^j(\bar{s}) &= 0 \quad \forall j = 1, 2, \dots, n. \end{aligned}$$

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} h(0, z) &= \tilde{\gamma}(0; z\tilde{v}_0) = p_0 \quad \forall 0 \leq z \leq 1 \\ \Rightarrow Y(0, z) &= \frac{\partial h}{\partial z}(0, z) = 0 \quad \forall 0 \leq z \leq 1 \\ \Rightarrow b^j(0) \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} &= \bar{Y}(0) = 0 \\ (2.4) \quad \Rightarrow \quad b^j(0) &= 0 \quad \forall j = 1, 2, \dots, n \end{aligned}$$

and

$$(2.5) \quad \nabla_s \bar{Y}(0) = \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial s \partial z}(0, 0) = \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial z \partial s}(0, 0) = \frac{\partial^2}{\partial z \partial s} \Big|_{(0,0)} \tilde{\gamma}(s; z\tilde{v}_0) = \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \Big|_{z=0} (z\tilde{v}_0) = \tilde{v}_0.$$

By an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 1.4 (1.17) holds for some constants  $C_2 > 0, C_3 > 0$ , with  $\tilde{v} = 0$ . Hence there exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$|\tilde{X}(s)| \leq C \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_1.$$

Since  $\tilde{\gamma}$  satisfies (1.10),

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= \nabla_s \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial s} \right) - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}} \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial s}, \cdot \right) \\ \Rightarrow 0 &= \nabla_z \nabla_s \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial s} \right) - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_z (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_z \left( \widetilde{\text{Ric}} \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial s}, \cdot \right) \right) \\ \Rightarrow 0 &= \nabla_s \nabla_s Y(s, z) + \tilde{R} \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial z}, \frac{\partial h}{\partial s} \right) \frac{\partial h}{\partial s} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_z (\nabla \tilde{R}) \\ (2.6) \quad &+ \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} (\nabla_z \widetilde{\text{Ric}}) \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial s}, \cdot \right) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s Y, \cdot) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\widetilde{R}(X_1, X_2)X_3(q, s) = R(X_1, X_2)X_3(q, \tau)$  for any  $X_1, X_2, X_3 \in T_qM$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ . Putting  $z = 0$  we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 &= \nabla_s \nabla_s \overline{Y}(s) + \widetilde{R}(\overline{Y}, \widetilde{X})\widetilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\overline{Y}(s)} (\nabla \widetilde{R}(h(s, 0), s)) \\
 &\quad + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} (\nabla_{\overline{Y}(s)} \widetilde{\text{Ric}})(\widetilde{X}, \cdot) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s Y, \cdot) \quad \text{in } (0, s_1) \\
 &= \frac{d^2 b^k}{ds^2} + \left( b^j \frac{db^i}{ds} + b^i \frac{db^j}{ds} \right) \widetilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^k + b^i b^j b^m \frac{\partial \widetilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^k}{\partial x^m} + b^m \left( \frac{db^r}{ds} + b^i b^j \widetilde{\Gamma}_{ij}^r \right) \widetilde{\Gamma}_{mr}^k \\
 &\quad + g^{jk} b^i \left\langle \widetilde{R} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x_i}, \widetilde{X} \right) \widetilde{X}, \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \right\rangle - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} g^{kj} b^i \left\langle \nabla_i (\nabla \widetilde{R}), \frac{\partial}{\partial x_j} \right\rangle \\
 (2.7) \quad &+ \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} g^{jk} a^i b^m \nabla_m \widetilde{R}_{ij} + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} g^{jk} \left( \frac{db^i}{ds} + b^m b^r \widetilde{\Gamma}_{mr}^i \right) \widetilde{R}_{ij}
 \end{aligned}$$

holds in  $(0, s_1)$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, n$ . By (2.5),

$$g_{ij}(p_0, 0) \frac{db^i}{ds}(0) \frac{db^j}{ds}(0) = 1.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 \lambda_1 \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{db^k}{ds}(0) \right)^2 &\leq g_{ij}(p_0, 0) \frac{db^i}{ds}(0) \frac{\partial b^j}{\partial s}(0) \leq \lambda_2 \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{db^k}{ds}(0) \right)^2 \\
 (2.8) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \lambda_1 \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{db^k}{ds}(0) \right)^2 &\leq 1 \leq \lambda_2 \sum_{k=1}^n \left( \frac{db^k}{ds}(0) \right)^2
 \end{aligned}$$

for some constant  $\lambda_2 > \lambda_1 > 0$  depending only on  $g_{ij}(p_0, 0)$ . Let

$$E = \sum_{k=1}^n \left\{ (b^k)^2 + \left( \frac{db^k}{ds} \right)^2 \right\}$$

and

$$s_2 = \sup \{ 0 < s'_1 \leq s_1 : |b^i(s)| \leq 1 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s'_1, i = 1, 2, \dots, n \}.$$

By (2.4)  $s_2 > 0$ . Then by (2.7) and (2.8),

$$\begin{aligned}
 \left| \frac{dE}{ds} \right| &= 2 \left| \sum_{k=1}^n \left( b^k \frac{db^k}{ds} + \frac{db^k}{ds} \frac{d^2b^k}{ds^2} \right) \right| \\
 &\leq \sum_{k=1}^n \left\{ 2|b^k| \left| \frac{db^k}{ds} \right| + C \left| \frac{db^k}{ds} \right| \left[ \sum_{i=1}^n \left( |b^i| + \left| \frac{db^i}{ds} \right| \right) + \sum_{i,j,m=1}^n |b^i b^j b^m| \right. \right. \\
 &\quad \left. \left. + \sum_{i,j=1}^n \left( |b^i b^j| + |b^i| \left| \frac{db^j}{ds} \right| \right) \right] \right\} \\
 &\leq C_4 E \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2 \\
 \Rightarrow \frac{d}{ds} (e^{-C_4 s} E) &\leq 0 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2 \\
 (2.9) \quad \Rightarrow E(s) &\leq e^{C_4 s} E(0) \leq e^{C_4 s_1} / \lambda_1 = C_5 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2.
 \end{aligned}$$

for some constants  $C_1 > 0$  and  $C_4 > 0$  independent of  $s_2$ . We claim that

$$s_2 \geq \min(1/(2\sqrt{C_5}), s_1).$$

Suppose not. Then  $s_2 < \min(1/(2\sqrt{C_5}), s_1)$ . By (2.4) and (2.9),

$$|b^i(s)| = \left| \int_0^s \frac{db^i}{ds} ds \right| \leq \sqrt{C_5} s \leq \frac{1}{2} \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2, i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Then by continuity there exists a constant  $\delta > 0$  such that

$$|b^i(s)| \leq 1 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_2 + \delta, i = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

This contradicts the maximality of  $s_2$ . Hence  $s_2 \geq \min(1/(2\sqrt{C_5}), s_1)$ . Let

$$s_3 = \min(1/(2\sqrt{C_5}), s_1).$$

Then (2.9) holds for all  $0 \leq s \leq s_3$ . By (2.8) there exists  $i_0 \in \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$  such that

$$\left| \frac{db^{i_0}}{ds}(0) \right| \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n\lambda_2}}.$$

By replacing  $\tilde{v}_0$  by  $-\tilde{v}_0$  if necessary and permutating the indices we may assume without loss of generality that

$$(2.10) \quad \frac{db^1}{ds}(0) \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n\lambda_2}}.$$

By (2.7) and (2.9),

$$(2.11) \quad \frac{d^2b^1}{ds^2}(s) + C_6 \geq 0 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_3$$

for some constant  $C_6 > 0$ . Let

$$\bar{s}_0 = \min(s_1, (2\sqrt{C_5})^{-1}, (2\sqrt{n\lambda_2}C_6)^{-1}),$$

$\bar{\tau}_0 = \bar{s}_0^{1/(1-p)}$ , and  $s_4 = \sup\{s' \leq \bar{s} : db^1(s)/ds > 0 \ \forall 0 \leq s < s'\}$ . Then  $s_4 \leq \bar{s} \leq \bar{s}_0$ . Integrating (2.11), by (2.10) we have

$$(2.12) \quad \frac{db^1}{ds}(s) \geq \frac{db^1}{ds}(0) - C_6 s \geq \frac{1}{\sqrt{n\lambda_2}} - C_6 \bar{s}_0 \geq \frac{1}{2\sqrt{n\lambda_2}} > 0 \quad \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_4.$$

Suppose  $s_4 < \bar{s}$ . Then  $s_4 < \bar{s}_0$ . By (2.12) and continuity there exists  $\delta \in (0, \bar{s} - s_4)$  such that  $db^1(s)/ds > 0$  on  $(0, s_4 + \delta)$ . This contradicts the maximality of  $s_4$ . Hence  $s_4 = \bar{s}$ . Integrating (2.12) over  $(0, \bar{s})$ ,

$$b^1(\bar{s}) > b^1(0) = 0.$$

This contradicts (2.3). Hence no such  $v_0$  exists. Thus  $\ker(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_0) = 0$  for any  $0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_0$  and the theorem follows.  $\square$

By the proof of Theorem 2.1 it is natural to define the following:

**Definition 2.1.** Let  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  be a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic in  $(s_1, s_2)$ . We say that a vector field  $\tilde{Y}(s)$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field in  $(s_1, s_2)$  if  $\tilde{Y}(s)$  satisfies

$$(2.13) \quad \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{Y} + \tilde{R}(\tilde{Y}, \tilde{\gamma}')\tilde{\gamma}' - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{Y}}(\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{Y}}(\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{\gamma}', \cdot)) = 0$$

in  $(s_1, s_2)$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$ .

**Definition 2.2.** Let  $\gamma(\tau)$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic in  $(\tau_1, \tau_2)$  and let  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  be given by (1.5). We say that a vector field  $Y(\tau)$  along  $\gamma$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field in  $(\tau_1, \tau_2)$  if  $\tilde{Y}(s) = Y(s^{1-p})$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field in  $(s_1, s_2)$  in  $(s_1, s_2)$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  where  $s_i = \tau_i^{1-p}$ ,  $i = 1, 2$ .

**Definition 2.3.** Let  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  be a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . For any  $0 \leq s_0 < s_1 \leq \bar{s}$ , we say that  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_1)$  is  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -conjugate to  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_0)$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}|_{[s_0, s_1]}$  if there exists a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field  $\tilde{Y}(s) \not\equiv 0$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}|_{[s_0, s_1]}$  such that  $\tilde{Y}(s_0) = \tilde{Y}(s_1) = 0$ .

**Definition 2.4.** Let  $\gamma(\tau)$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$ . For any  $0 \leq \tau_0 < \tau_1 \leq \bar{\tau}$ , we say that  $\gamma(\tau_1)$  is  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $\gamma(\tau_0)$  along  $\gamma|_{[\tau_0, \tau_1]}$  if  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_1)$  is  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -conjugate to  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_0)$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}|_{[s_0, s_1]}$  where  $\tilde{\gamma}(s)$  is given by (1.5) with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$  and  $s_i = \tau_i^{1-p}$  for  $i = 0, 1$ .

**Theorem 2.2.** Let  $0 < \bar{\tau} < t_0$ ,  $v, w \in T_{p_0} M$ , and let  $\gamma = \gamma(\tau; v) : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies (1.18). Let  $\tilde{\gamma}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \tilde{v})$  be given by (1.5) with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$  where  $\tilde{v} = v/(1-p)$ . Suppose  $Y(\tau)$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field along  $\gamma$  with  $Y(0) = 0$  and  $\nabla_s \tilde{Y}(0) = w/(1-p)$  where  $\tilde{Y}(s) = Y(\tau)$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ . Then

$$(2.14) \quad Y(\tau) = d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^\tau)_v(w) \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha : (-\varepsilon_1, \varepsilon_1) \rightarrow T_{p_0}M$  be a curve in  $T_{p_0}M$  such that  $\alpha(0) = v$ ,  $\alpha'(0) = w$ . Let  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . By continuous dependence of solutions of O.D.E. on the initial data there exist  $\varepsilon \in (0, \varepsilon_1)$  such that for any  $\rho \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  there exists a unique solution  $\tilde{\gamma}(s; \alpha(\rho)/(1-p))$  of (1.10) on  $[0, \bar{s}]$  which satisfies (1.13) with  $\tilde{v}$  being replaced by  $\alpha(\rho)/(1-p)$ . For any  $|\rho| < \varepsilon$ , let  $\gamma(\tau; \alpha(\rho)) = \tilde{\gamma}(s; \alpha(\rho)/(1-p))$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ . Then  $\gamma(\tau; \alpha(\rho))$  is the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$  which satisfies (1.18) with  $v$  being replaced by  $\alpha(\rho)$ . Let

$$h(\tau, \rho) = \mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}(\alpha(\rho)) = \gamma(\tau; \alpha(\rho)) \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}, |\rho| < \varepsilon$$

and

$$\tilde{Y}_1(s) = Y_1(\tau) = \frac{\partial h}{\partial \rho}(\tau, 0) \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}, s = \tau^{1-p}.$$

Then

$$Y_1(\tau) = d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_v(w) \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}.$$

Since  $h(0, \rho) = p_0 \quad \forall \rho \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$ ,

$$(2.15) \quad Y_1(0) = 0 = Y(0) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \tilde{Y}_1(0) = \tilde{Y}(0) = 0.$$

Then

$$(2.16) \quad \begin{aligned} \nabla_s \tilde{Y}_1(0) &= \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial s \partial \rho}(0, 0) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} \Big|_{\rho=0} \frac{\partial h}{\partial s}(0, \rho) = \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} \Big|_{\rho=0} \tilde{\gamma}'(0; \alpha(\rho)/(1-p)) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} \Big|_{\rho=0} \frac{\alpha(\rho)}{1-p} = \frac{\alpha'(0)}{1-p} = \frac{w}{1-p} = \nabla_s \tilde{Y}(0). \end{aligned}$$

By an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 2.1  $\tilde{Y}_1(s)$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field along  $\tilde{\gamma}$ . Since both  $\tilde{Y}$  and  $\tilde{Y}_1$  satisfies (2.13), (2.15), and (2.16) on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ , by uniqueness of O.D.E.  $\tilde{Y} \equiv \tilde{Y}_1$  on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . Hence  $Y(\tau)$  satisfies (2.14) and the theorem follows. □

By Theorem 2.2 and an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 3.9 in Chapter 5 of [1] we have

**Theorem 2.3.** *Let  $0 < \bar{\tau} < t_0$ ,  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ , and let  $\gamma = \gamma(\tau; v) : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies (1.18). If  $\gamma(\bar{\tau})$  is not  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$ , then for any  $V_0 \in T_{\gamma(\bar{\tau})}M$  there exists a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field  $Y(\tau)$  along  $\gamma$  with  $Y(0) = 0$  and  $Y(\bar{\tau}) = V_0$ .*

**Definition 2.5** (cf. Definition 4 of [25]). For any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ , we define the injectivity domain  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$  at time  $\bar{\tau}$  by

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}) &= \{q \in M : \exists \text{ a unique } \mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})\text{-length minimizing } \mathcal{L}_p\text{-geodesic} \\ &\quad \gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M \text{ such that } \gamma(0) = p_0, \gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q, \text{ and } q \text{ is not} \\ &\quad \mathcal{L}_p\text{-conjugate to } p_0 \text{ along } \gamma\}. \end{aligned}$$

and we define the cut locus  $C_p(\bar{\tau})$  at time  $\bar{\tau}$  by  $C_p(\bar{\tau}) = M \setminus \Omega(\bar{\tau})$ .

**Definition 2.6.** For any  $q_0 \in M$ ,  $0 < \tau_0 < \bar{\tau} < t_0$ , we define the  $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}$ -injectivity domain  $\Omega_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau})$  at time  $\bar{\tau}$  by

$$\Omega_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau}) = \{q \in M : \exists \text{ a unique } \mathcal{L}_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(q, \bar{\tau})\text{-length minimizing } \mathcal{L}_p\text{-geodesic } \gamma : [\tau_0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M \text{ such that } \gamma(\tau_0) = q_0, \gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q, \text{ and } q \text{ is not } \mathcal{L}_p\text{-conjugate to } q_0 \text{ along } \gamma\}$$

and we define the  $\mathcal{L}_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}$ -cut locus  $C_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau})$  at time  $\bar{\tau}$  by  $C_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau}) = M \setminus \Omega_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\bar{\tau})$ .

By the theory of ordinary Riemannian geometry and a similar argument as the discussion on p. 513 of [25]  $L_p(q, \tau)$  is a smooth function in  $\cup_{\tau' > 0} \Omega_p(\tau') \times \{\tau'\}$  and  $L_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(q, \tau)$  is a smooth function in  $\cup_{\tau' > \tau_0} \Omega_{\tau_0,p}^{q_0}(\tau') \times \{\tau'\}$ .

**Lemma 2.2.** Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ . Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $0 < \rho \leq \bar{\tau}$ ,  $L_p(\cdot, \rho)$  is locally Lipschitz in  $M$  with respect to the metric  $g(\rho)$ .

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of Proposition 2.12 of [25] and the proof of Theorem 1.4 to prove the lemma. Let  $0 < \rho \leq \bar{\tau}$ ,  $r_0 > 0$ , and let  $q_1, q_2 \in B_0(p_0, r_0)$ . By Theorem 1.2 for  $i = 1, 2$ , there exists  $\mathcal{L}_p(q_i, \rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma_i$ , with  $\gamma_i(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma_i(\rho) = q_i$ . Let  $\gamma : [0, d] \rightarrow M$  be a normalized minimizing geodesic with respect to the metric  $g(0)$  with  $\gamma(0) = q_1$ ,  $\gamma(d) = q_2$ ,  $|\gamma'| = |\gamma'|_{g(0)} = 1$  on  $[0, d]$  where  $d = d_0(q_1, q_2)$ . Then  $\gamma([0, d]) \subset B_0(p_0, 2r_0)$ . Let

$$K_0 = \sup_{B_0(p_0, 2r_0) \times [0, \bar{\tau}]} (|R| + |\text{Ric}|).$$

Then  $K_0 < \infty$ . For  $i = 1, 2$ , let  $d_i = d_0(p_0, q_i)$  and let  $\bar{\gamma}_i : [0, d_i] \rightarrow M$  be a normalized minimizing geodesic with respect to the metric  $g(0)$  with  $\bar{\gamma}_i(0) = p_0$ ,  $\bar{\gamma}_i(d_i) = q_i$ . Then  $d_i < r_0$  and  $\bar{\gamma}_i([0, d_i]) \subset B_0(p_0, 2r_0)$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . By Lemma 1.6 and the proof of Lemma 1.7, there exist constants  $A_1 = A_1(\bar{\tau}, r_0, K_0) > 0$  and  $r_1 = r_1(\bar{\tau}, r_0, K_0) \geq 2r_0$  such that

$$\begin{cases} L_p(q_i, \rho) \leq A_1 & \forall i = 1, 2 \\ d_0(p_0, \gamma_i(\tau)) < r_1 & \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \rho, i = 1, 2. \end{cases}$$

Let

$$K_1 = \sup_{B_0(p_0, 2r_1) \times [0, \bar{\tau}]} (|R| + |\nabla R| + |\text{Ric}|)$$

and let  $\tilde{\gamma}_i(s) = \gamma_i(\tau)$  with  $s = \tau^{1-p}$  for  $i = 1, 2$ . Then  $\tilde{\gamma}_1, \tilde{\gamma}_2$ , are  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesics. We assume now  $d = d_0(q_1, q_2) < \rho/4$ . Similar to the proof of Proposition 2.12 of [25] we let

$$\beta(\tau) = \begin{cases} \gamma_1(\tau) & \text{if } 0 \leq \tau \leq \rho - 2d \\ \gamma_1(2\tau - \rho + 2d) & \text{if } \rho - 2d \leq \tau \leq \rho - d \\ \gamma(\tau - \rho + d) & \text{if } \rho - d \leq \tau \leq \rho. \end{cases}$$

Then by Lemma 1.5,

$$\begin{aligned}
 &L_p(q_2, \rho) \\
 &\leq \mathcal{L}_p(q_2, \beta, \rho) \\
 &\leq L_p(q_1, \rho) - \int_{\rho-2d}^{\rho} \tau^p R(\gamma_1(\tau), \tau) d\tau + \int_{\rho-2d}^{\rho-d} \tau^p [R(\gamma_1(\tau'), \tau) + 4|\gamma'_1(\tau')|_{g(\tau)}^2] d\tau \\
 &\quad + \int_{\rho-d}^{\rho} \tau^p [R(\gamma(\tau''), \tau) + |\gamma'(\tau'')|_{g(\tau)}^2] d\tau \\
 &\leq L_p(q_1, \rho) + (p+1)^{-1} [2K_1(\rho^{p+1} - (\rho-2d)^{p+1}) + e^{2K_1\rho}(\rho^{p+1} - (\rho-d)^{p+1})] \\
 (2.17) \quad &+ 2e^{2K_1\rho} \int_{\rho-2d}^{\rho} \tau^p |\gamma'_1(\tau)|^2 d\tau.
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\tau' = 2\tau - \rho + 2d$  and  $\tau'' = \tau - \rho + d$ . By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 1.4, (1.17) holds in  $(0, \bar{\mathfrak{s}}_\rho)$ ,  $\bar{\mathfrak{s}}_\rho = \rho^{1-p}$ , for some constant  $C_2 > 0$ ,  $C_3 > 0$ , depending only on  $K_1$  with  $\tilde{X}(s)$  and  $\tilde{v}$ , being replaced by  $\tilde{\gamma}'_i(s)$  and  $\tilde{v}_i = \tilde{\gamma}'_i(0)$ , for  $i = 1, 2$ . Since  $\tilde{\gamma}'_i(s) = \tau^p \gamma'_i(\tau)/(1-p)$ , by (1.17) there exist constants  $C_4 > 0$ ,  $C_5 > 0$  and  $C_6 > 0$  such that

$$(2.18) \quad C_4|v_i|^2 - C_5 \leq \tau^{2p} |\gamma'_i(\tau)|^2 \leq C_6(1 + |v_i|^2) \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \rho, i = 1, 2.$$

By (2.18),

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_4\rho|v_i|^2 &= C_4 \int_0^\rho |v_i|^2 d\tau \leq C_5\rho + \int_0^\rho \tau^{2p} |\gamma'_i(\tau)|^2 d\tau \\
 &\leq C_5\rho + \rho^p \left( L_p(q_i, \rho) + K_1 \int_0^\rho \tau^p d\tau \right) \\
 (2.19) \quad &\leq C_5\rho + \rho^p(A_1 + (K_1\rho^{p+1}/(p+1))) = C_7 \quad \forall i = 1, 2.
 \end{aligned}$$

By (2.18) and (2.19),

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{\rho-2d}^{\rho} \tau^p |\gamma'_i(\tau)|^2 d\tau &\leq C_6(1 + |v_i|^2) \int_{\rho-2d}^{\rho} \tau^{-p} d\tau \leq 2C_6(1 + |v_i|^2)d/(\rho-2d)^p \\
 (2.20) \quad &\leq 4dC_6(1 + (C_7/C_4\rho))/\rho^p \quad \forall i = 1, 2.
 \end{aligned}$$

By (2.17) and (2.20) there exists a constant  $C_8 = C_8(\rho, \bar{\tau}, r_0) > 0$  such that

$$L_p(q_2, \rho) \leq L_p(q_1, \rho) + C_8 d_0(q_1, q_2) \quad \forall q_1, q_2 \in B_0(p_0, r_0), d_0(q_1, q_2) < \rho/4.$$

Hence by Lemma 1.5,

$$L_p(q_2, \rho) \leq L_p(q_1, \rho) + C_9 d_\rho(q_1, q_2) \quad \forall q_1, q_2 \in B_0(p_0, r_0), d_0(q_1, q_2) < \rho/4$$

for some constant  $C_9 > 0$ . Interchanging the role of  $q_1$  and  $q_2$  in the above inequality,

$$L_p(q_1, \rho) \leq L_p(q_2, \rho) + C_9 d_\rho(q_1, q_2) \quad \forall q_1, q_2 \in B_0(p_0, r_0), d_0(q_1, q_2) < \rho/4.$$

Hence

$$|L_p(q_1, \rho) - L_p(q_2, \rho)| \leq C_9 d_\rho(q_1, q_2) \quad \forall q_1, q_2 \in B_0(p_0, r_0), d_0(q_1, q_2) < \rho/4$$

and the lemma follows. □

By an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.13 of [25] we have

**Lemma 2.3.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ . Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, \bar{\tau})$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then for any  $q \in M$ ,  $L_p(q, \cdot)$  is locally Lipschitz in  $(0, \bar{\tau}]$ .*

**Lemma 2.4.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$  is open in  $M$  for any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and*

$$\cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} \Omega_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}$$

*is open in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  with respect to the product metric  $g dx^2 \oplus d\tau^2$ . Hence  $C_p(\bar{\tau})$  is close in  $M$  for any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $\cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} C_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}$  is closed in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  with respect to the product metric  $g dx^2 \oplus d\tau^2$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Let  $\gamma(\tau; v)$  be the minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic given by Theorem 1.2 which satisfies (1.11) and (1.18) for some  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ . Since  $q$  is not  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$ , by Theorem 2.2,

$$\ker(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_v) = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \det(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_v) \neq 0.$$

By the inverse function theorem there exist  $\varepsilon \in (0, \min(\bar{\tau}, t_0 - \bar{\tau})/2)$ ,  $\mathcal{B}(v, r_0)$  and an open neighbourhood  $O(q)$  of  $(q, \bar{\tau})$  in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  such that the map

$$\phi : \mathcal{B}(v, r_0) \times (\bar{\tau} - \varepsilon, \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon) \rightarrow O(q)$$

given by  $\phi(v, \tau) = (\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\tau}(v), \tau)$  is a diffeomorphism for any  $\tau \in (\bar{\tau} - \varepsilon, \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon)$  and

$$(2.21) \quad \det(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\tau})_{v'}) \neq 0 \quad \forall |\tau - \bar{\tau}| < \varepsilon, v' \in \mathcal{B}(v, r_0).$$

We claim that there exists  $B_0(q, r_1) \times \{\bar{\tau}\} \subset O(q)$  such that  $B_0(q, r_1) \subset \Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Suppose not. Then there exists a sequence of points  $\{q_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$ ,  $q_i \notin \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}) \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , such that  $q_i \rightarrow q$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . By the proof of Lemma 2.2, there exist a constant  $C_1 > 0$  and  $i_0 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that

$$(2.22) \quad \begin{aligned} &L_p(q_i, \bar{\tau}) \leq L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) + C_1 d_0(q_i, q) \quad \forall i \geq i_0 \\ \Rightarrow &\exists C_2 > 0 \text{ such that } L_p(q_i, \bar{\tau}) \leq C_2 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+. \end{aligned}$$

Now by Theorem 1.2 for any  $i = 1, 2, \dots$ , either

- (i)  $q_i$  is  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along some  $\mathcal{L}_p(q_i, \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma(\cdot; v_i)$  satisfying  $\gamma(0; v_i) = p$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}; v_i) = q_i$



or

- (ii) there exists two  $\mathcal{L}_p(q_i, \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesics  $\gamma(\cdot; v_i)$  and  $\gamma(\cdot; v'_i)$  satisfying  $\gamma(0; v_i) = \gamma(0; v'_i) = p, \gamma(\bar{\tau}; v_i) = \gamma(\bar{\tau}; v'_i) = q_i$ , with  $v_i \neq v'_i$

where  $\gamma(\cdot; w)$  stands for the solution of (1.11) and (1.18) with  $v$  being replaced by  $w$ . Then either (i) or (ii) holds for infinitely many  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . We now divide the proof into two cases:

**Case 1:** (i) holds for infinitely many  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

Without loss of generality we may assume that (i) holds for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Then by Theorem 2.2,

$$(2.23) \quad \ker(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_{v_i}) \neq 0 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \quad \Rightarrow \quad \det(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_{v_i}) = 0 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

By (2.22) and an argument similar to the proof of (2.19) there exists a constant  $r_2 > 0$  such that

$$(2.24) \quad |v_i| \leq r_2 \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots$$

Since the closed ball  $\overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_2)}$  is compact in  $T_{p_0}M$  with respect to the metric  $g(p_0, 0)$ , the sequence  $\{v_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  has a subsequence which we may assume without loss of generality to be the sequence itself such that  $v_i \rightarrow v_0$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for some  $v_0 \in T_{p_0}M$ . By continuous dependence of solutions of O.D.E. on the initial data  $\gamma(\tau; v_i)$  will converge uniformly to a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma(\tau; v_0)$  on  $[0, \bar{\tau}]$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . By Fatou's Lemma and (2.22),

$$L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) \leq \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma(\cdot; v_0), \bar{\tau}) \leq \liminf_{i \rightarrow \infty} \mathcal{L}_p(q_i, \gamma_i(\cdot; v_i), \bar{\tau}) = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} L_p(q_i, \bar{\tau}) \leq L_p(q, \bar{\tau}).$$

Hence

$$L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma(\cdot; v_0), \bar{\tau}).$$

Thus  $\gamma(\cdot; v_0)$  is a minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic. Since  $q \in \Omega(\bar{\tau})$ , the minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -geodesic is unique. Hence  $v_0 = v$ . Letting  $i \rightarrow \infty$  in (2.23),

$$\det(d(\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}})_v) = 0.$$

This contradicts (2.21). Hence case 1 does not hold.

**Case 2:** (ii) holds for infinitely many  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ .

Without loss of generality we may assume that (ii) holds for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . By the same argument as case 1 there exists  $r_2 > 0$  such that  $v_i, v'_i \in \overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_2)}$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ . Then as in case 1 by choosing a subsequence if necessary we may assume without loss of generality that  $v_i \rightarrow v$  and  $v'_i \rightarrow v$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . Then there exists  $i_0 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that  $v_i, v'_i \in \mathcal{B}(v, r_0)$  for all  $i \geq i_0$ . Since the map  $\phi$  is a diffeomorphism,

$$\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}(v_i) = \mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}(v'_i) = q_i \quad \forall i \geq i_0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad v_i = v'_i \quad \forall i \geq i_0.$$

Contradiction arise. Hence case 2 does not hold. Thus no such sequence  $\{q_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  exists. Hence there exists  $B_0(q, r_1) \times \{\bar{\tau}\} \subset O(q)$  such that  $B_0(q, r_1) \subset \Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Therefore  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$  is open. By a similar argument  $\cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} \Omega_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}$  is open in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

By Theorem 1.2, Lemma 2.4, and an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.16 of [25] but with Lemma 2.2 replacing Proposition 2.12 in the proof there we have

**Lemma 2.5.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then  $C_p(\bar{\tau})$  is a closed set of measure zero for any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ .*

**Lemma 2.6.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then  $\cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} C_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}$  is a closed set of measure zero in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  with respect to the product metric  $g \, dx^2 \oplus d\tau^2$ .*

*Proof.* This result for the case  $p = 1/2$  is stated in [25]. We will give a proof of it here for any  $0 < p < 1$ . By Lemma 2.4 we know that  $\cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} C_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}$  is closed in  $M \times (0, t_0)$ . It suffices to show that  $\cup_{\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2} (C_p(\tau) \cap B_0(p_0, r_0)) \times \{\tau\}$  has measure zero in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  for any  $0 < \tau_1 < \tau_2 < t_0$  and  $r_0 > 0$ .

Let  $\bar{\tau} \in [\tau_1, \tau_2]$ ,  $\delta > 0$ ,  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau}, r_0) = \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}) \cap B_0(p_0, r_0)$ ,

$$D_p(r_0) = \cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} \Omega_p(\tau, r_0) \times \{\tau\},$$

and

$$C_p(\tau_1, \tau_2, r_0) = \cup_{\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2} (C_p(\tau) \cap B_0(p_0, r_0)) \times \{\tau\}.$$

We choose a compact set  $K(\bar{\tau}) \subset \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}, r_0)$  such that

$$m_{\bar{\tau}}(\Omega(\bar{\tau}, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau})) < \delta.$$

Then by Lemma 2.5,

$$(2.25) \quad m_{\bar{\tau}}(B_0(p_0, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau})) < \delta.$$

Since  $D_p(r_0)$  is open, for any  $q \in K(\bar{\tau})$  there exists  $\varepsilon_q > 0$  and an open ball  $O_{\bar{\tau}}(q) \subset \Omega(\bar{\tau})$  containing  $q$  such that  $O_{\bar{\tau}}(q) \times [\bar{\tau} - \varepsilon_q, \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon_q] \subset D_p(r_0)$ . Since  $K(\bar{\tau})$  is compact,

$$K(\bar{\tau}) \subset \cup_{i=1}^{n(\bar{\tau})} O_{\bar{\tau}}(q_i)$$

for some  $q_1, \dots, q_{n(\bar{\tau})} \in K(\bar{\tau})$ . Let  $\varepsilon_{\bar{\tau}} = \min_{1 \leq i \leq n_0} \varepsilon_{q_i}$ . Since  $[\tau_1, \tau_2]$  is compact, there exists  $\tau_1 \leq \bar{\tau}_1 < \bar{\tau}_2 < \dots < \bar{\tau}_{k_0} \leq \tau_2$  such that

$$[\tau_1, \tau_2] \subset \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} (\bar{\tau}_k - \varepsilon_k, \bar{\tau}_k + \varepsilon_k)$$

where  $\varepsilon_k = \varepsilon_{\bar{\tau}_k}$  for all  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0$ . Let  $I_1 = (\bar{\tau}_1 - \varepsilon_1, \bar{\tau}_1 + \varepsilon_1) \cap [\tau_1, \tau_2]$  and  $I_k = ((\bar{\tau}_k - \varepsilon_k, \bar{\tau}_k + \varepsilon_k) \setminus \cup_{j=1}^{k-1} I_j) \cap [\tau_1, \tau_2]$  for all  $k = 2, 3, \dots, k_0$ . Then

$$[\tau_1, \tau_2] = \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} I_k$$

For any  $k = 1, 2, \dots, k_0$ , let  $E_k = (\cup_{i=1}^{n_k} O_{\bar{\tau}_k}(q_i)) \times I_k$  where  $n_k = n(\bar{\tau}_k)$ . Then  $\cup_{k=1}^{k_0} E_k \subset D_p(r_0)$  and

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_p(\tau_1, \tau_2, r_0) &\subset (B_0(p_0, r_0) \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]) \setminus \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} E_k \\
 &\subset \cup_{k=1}^{k_0} (B_0(p_0, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau}_k)) \times I_k \\
 \Rightarrow m(C_p(\tau_1, \tau_2, r_0)) &\leq m\left(\cup_{k=1}^{k_0} (B_0(p_0, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau}_k)) \times I_k\right) \\
 (2.26) \qquad \qquad \qquad &\leq \sum_{k=1}^{k_0} m((B_0(p_0, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau}_k)) \times I_k).
 \end{aligned}$$

Let  $C_1 = \sup_{\overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]} R(q, \tau)$ . Then  $C_1 < \infty$ . Note that by [9] the volume form  $\sqrt{g}$  of  $M$  satisfies

$$(2.27) \quad \left| \frac{d\sqrt{g}}{d\tau} \right| = |R\sqrt{g}| \leq C_1\sqrt{g} \quad \text{in } \overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]$$

$$(2.28) \quad \Rightarrow \sqrt{g}(q, \tau) \leq e^{C_1\varepsilon_k} \sqrt{g}(q, \bar{\tau}_k) \quad \forall q \in \overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)}, \tau \in I_k, k = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

By (2.25), (2.26), and (2.28),

$$\begin{aligned}
 m(C_p(\tau_1, \tau_2, r_0)) &\leq \sum_{k=1}^{k_0} \{e^{C_1\varepsilon_k} |I_k| m_{\bar{\tau}_k}(B_0(p_0, r_0) \setminus K(\bar{\tau}_k))\} \\
 &\leq e^{C_1} \delta \sum_{k=1}^{k_0} |I_k| \leq e^{C_1} (\tau_2 - \tau_1) \delta.
 \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\delta \rightarrow 0$ ,

$$m(C_p(\tau_1, \tau_2, r_0)) = 0$$

and the lemma follows. □

By Lemma 2.2 and Lemma 2.3 we have

**Lemma 2.7.** *Suppose  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$ . Then  $|\nabla L_p(q, \tau)|$  and  $\partial L_p(q, \tau)/\partial \tau$  are locally bounded measurable functions on  $M \times (0, t_0)$ .*

### 3. Second variation formula for the $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ -length

In this section we will prove the second variation formula for  $L_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ . We will prove various properties of the  $L_p(q, \tau)$ -length, the generalized reduced distance  $l_p$ , and the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$ . We will now assume that  $(M, g)$  satisfies (1.20) in  $(0, t_0)$  for some constant  $c_1 > 0$  for the rest of the paper. For any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ , let

$$U'_p(\bar{\tau}) = \{v \in U_p(\bar{\tau}) : \gamma_v(\bar{\tau}) \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}) \text{ where } \gamma_v(\cdot) = \gamma(\cdot; v) : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M \text{ is the } \mathcal{L}_p\text{-geodesic that satisfies (1.18)}\}.$$

Note that by the definition of  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$  and Theorem 1.2,

$$\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}|_{U'_p(\bar{\tau})} : U'_p(\bar{\tau}) \rightarrow \Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$$

is a diffeomorphism. For any  $v \in U_p(\bar{\tau})$ , let  $J_p(v, \bar{\tau})$  be the Jacobian of the  $\mathcal{L}_p\text{-exp}_{p_0}^{\bar{\tau}}$  map at  $v$ . Let

$$\Omega_p = \cup_{0 < \tau < t_0} \Omega_p(\tau) \times \{\tau\}.$$

By the same argument as the discussion on p. 518 of [25]  $L_p(q, \tau)$  is a smooth function in  $\Omega_p$ . If  $\tau \in (0, t_0)$  and  $q \in \Omega_p(\tau)$ , then there exists a unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma$  satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0$ ,  $\gamma(\tau) = q$ , such that  $q$  is not  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$ . Then by Lemma 1.1,

$$(3.1) \quad \nabla L_p(q, \tau) = 2\tau^p \gamma'(\tau).$$

**Lemma 3.1.** *Let  $(q, \bar{\tau}) \in \Omega_p$  and let  $\gamma$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0$ ,  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ , which minimizes the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length. Suppose  $Y$  is as in Lemma 1.1. Then*

$$(3.2) \quad \begin{aligned} &\delta_Y^2 L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) \\ &\leq 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X(\bar{\tau}), \nabla_Y Y(\bar{\tau}) \rangle \\ &\quad + \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \{ \text{Hess}_R(Y, Y) + 2\langle R(Y, X)Y, X \rangle + 2|\nabla_X Y|^2 + 2\nabla_X \text{Ric}(Y, Y) \\ &\quad - 4\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) \} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

where  $X = X(\tau) = \gamma'(\tau)$ .

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the argument of section 7 of [18] to prove the theorem. Let  $f : [0, \bar{\tau}] \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow M$  be as in the proof of Lemma 1.1. Since

$$\begin{cases} L_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), \bar{\tau}) \leq \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), f(\cdot, z), \bar{\tau}) \quad \forall |z| < \varepsilon \\ L_p(f(\bar{\tau}, 0), \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, 0), f(\cdot, 0), \bar{\tau}), \end{cases}$$

differentiating (1.2) with respect to  $z$  and putting  $z = 0$ ,

$$(3.3) \quad \begin{aligned} &\delta_Y^2 L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) \\ &= \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \Big|_{z=0} L_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), \bar{\tau}) \leq \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \Big|_{z=0} \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), f(\cdot, z), \bar{\tau}) \\ &\leq \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p (Y(Y(R)) + 2|\nabla_X Y|^2 + 2\langle X, \nabla_Y \nabla_X Y \rangle) d\tau \\ &\leq \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \{ Y(Y(R)) + 2|\nabla_X Y|^2 + 2\langle X, \nabla_X \nabla_Y Y \rangle + 2\langle R(Y, X)Y, X \rangle \} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned} \langle \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle &= Y(\langle Y, X \rangle) - \langle Y, \nabla_Y X \rangle = Y(\langle Y, X \rangle) - \langle Y, \nabla_X Y \rangle \\ &= Y(\langle Y, X \rangle) - \frac{1}{2} X(\langle Y, Y \rangle), \end{aligned}$$

we have

$$\begin{aligned} &\frac{d}{d\tau} \langle \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle \\ &= X(\langle \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle) + \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} \langle \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle \\ &= \langle \nabla_X \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle + \langle \nabla_Y Y, \nabla_X X \rangle + Y\left(\frac{\partial g}{\partial \tau}(Y, X)\right) - \frac{1}{2} X\left(\frac{\partial g}{\partial \tau}(Y, Y)\right) \\ &= \langle \nabla_X \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle + \langle \nabla_Y Y, \nabla_X X \rangle + 2Y(\text{Ric}(Y, X)) - X(\text{Ric}(Y, Y)) \\ &= \langle \nabla_X \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle + \langle \nabla_Y Y, \nabla_X X \rangle + 2\text{Ric}(\nabla_Y Y, X) + 2\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) \\ (3.4) \quad &- (\nabla_X \text{Ric})(Y, Y). \end{aligned}$$

Note that (3.4) is stated in section 7 of [18] but there is no proof of it in [18]. We refer the reader to [16] for another proof of (3.4) by B. Klein and J. Lott. By (3.4),

$$\begin{aligned} &2 \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \langle X, \nabla_X \nabla_Y Y \rangle d\tau \\ &= 2 \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\{ \frac{d}{d\tau} \langle X, \nabla_Y Y \rangle - \langle \nabla_X X, \nabla_Y Y \rangle - 2\text{Ric}(\nabla_Y Y, X) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - 2\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) + (\nabla_X \text{Ric})(Y, Y) \right\} d\tau \\ &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X(\bar{\tau}), \nabla_Y Y(\bar{\tau}) \rangle \\ &\quad - 2 \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\{ \frac{p}{\tau} \langle \nabla_Y Y, X \rangle + \left\langle \nabla_Y Y, \frac{1}{2} \nabla R - \frac{p}{\tau} X - 2\text{Ric}(X, \cdot) \right\rangle \right. \\ &\quad \left. + 2\text{Ric}(\nabla_Y Y, X) + 2\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) - \nabla_X \text{Ric}(Y, Y) \right\} d\tau \\ &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X(\bar{\tau}), \nabla_Y Y(\bar{\tau}) \rangle \\ (3.5) \quad &+ \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \{ -(\nabla_Y Y)R - 4\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) + 2\nabla_X \text{Ric}(Y, Y) \} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

By (3.3) and (3.5), (3.2) follows. □

**Lemma 3.2.** *Let  $(q, \bar{\tau}) \in \Omega_p$  and let  $\gamma, X$ , be as in Lemma 3.1. Let  $b > (1 - p)/2$  be a constant and let  $Y(\tau)$  be a vector field along  $\gamma$  such that  $|Y(\bar{\tau})| = 1$  and  $Y(\tau)$  solves the O.D.E.*

$$(3.6) \quad \nabla_X Y = -\text{Ric}(Y, \cdot) + \frac{b}{\tau} Y \quad \text{in } (0, \bar{\tau}).$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \text{Hess}_{L_p(q, \bar{\tau})}(Y(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau})) \\
 & \leq -2\bar{\tau}^p \text{Ric}(q, \bar{\tau})(Y(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau})) + \frac{2b^2}{(p+2b-1)\bar{\tau}^{1-p}} \\
 (3.7) \quad & + (2p-1) \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p-1} \text{Ric}(Y, Y) \, d\tau - \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p H(X, Y) \, d\tau
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}
 \Delta L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) & \leq -2\bar{\tau}^p R(q, \bar{\tau}) + \frac{2nb^2}{(p+2b-1)\bar{\tau}^{1-p}} + \frac{2p-1}{\bar{\tau}^{2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b-1} R \, d\tau \\
 (3.8) \quad & - \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^{2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b} H(X) \, d\tau
 \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 H(X, Y) & = -\text{Hess}_R(Y, Y) - 2\langle R(Y, X)Y, X \rangle - 4(\nabla_X \text{Ric}(Y, Y) - \nabla_Y \text{Ric}(Y, X)) \\
 & - 2\text{Ric}_\tau(Y, Y) + 2|\text{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 - \frac{1}{\tau} \text{Ric}(Y, Y)
 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$(3.9) \quad H(X) = -R_\tau - \frac{1}{\tau} R - 2\langle X, \nabla R \rangle + 2\text{Ric}(X, X)$$

is the Hamilton's expressions for the matrix Harnack inequality and the trace Harnack inequality respectively (with time equal to  $-\tau$ ).

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the argument of section 7 of [18] to prove the lemma. By (3.6),

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y|^2 = 2 \text{Ric}(Y, Y) + 2\langle \nabla_X Y, Y \rangle = \frac{2b}{\tau} |Y|^2 \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau} \\
 (3.10) \quad & \Rightarrow |Y(\tau)|^2 = \left(\frac{\tau}{\bar{\tau}}\right)^{2b} \quad \forall 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau} \quad \text{and} \quad Y(0) = 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\begin{aligned}
 I_1 & = \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \{ \text{Hess}_R(Y, Y) + 2\langle R(Y, X)Y, X \rangle + 2|\nabla_X Y|^2 + 2\nabla_X \text{Ric}(Y, Y) \\
 & - 4\nabla_Y \text{Ric}(X, Y) \} \, d\tau.
 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$(3.11) \quad I_1 = - \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p H(X, Y) \, d\tau - I_2$$

where

$$(3.12) \quad I_2 = \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\{ 2 \operatorname{Ric}_\tau(Y, Y) - 2|\operatorname{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 + \frac{1}{\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) + 2\nabla_X \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) - 2|\nabla_X Y|^2 \right\} d\tau.$$

By p. 17 of [18] and (3.6),

$$(3.13) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{d}{d\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) &= \operatorname{Ric}_\tau(Y, Y) + \nabla_X \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) + 2 \operatorname{Ric}(\nabla_X Y, Y) \\ &= \operatorname{Ric}_\tau(Y, Y) + \nabla_X \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) - 2|\operatorname{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 + \frac{2b}{\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y). \end{aligned}$$

By (3.6), (3.10), (3.12), and (3.13),  $I_2$  is equal to

$$\begin{aligned} &\int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \left\{ 2 \frac{d}{d\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) - 2\nabla_X \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) + 4|\operatorname{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 - \frac{4b}{\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - 2|\operatorname{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 + \frac{1}{\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) + 2\nabla_X \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) \right. \\ &\quad \left. - 2 \left[ |\operatorname{Ric}(Y, \cdot)|^2 - \frac{2b}{\tau} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) + \frac{b^2}{\tau^2} |Y|^2 \right] \right\} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$(3.14) \quad \begin{aligned} I_2 &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \operatorname{Ric}(q, \bar{\tau})(Y(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau})) - \frac{2b^2}{(p+2b-1)\bar{\tau}^{1-p}} \\ &\quad + (1-2p) \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p-1} \operatorname{Ric}(Y, Y) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

By Lemma 1.1,

$$(3.15) \quad \delta_Y L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X, Y \rangle \quad \Rightarrow \quad \delta_{\nabla_Y Y} L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle X, \nabla_Y Y \rangle.$$

By (3.11), (3.14), (3.15), and Lemma 3.1, (3.7) follows. Let  $\{V_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be an orthonormal basis of  $T_{\gamma(\bar{\tau})}M$  with respect to the metric  $g(\gamma(\bar{\tau}), \bar{\tau})$ . For any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , let  $\tilde{Y}_i$  the solution of (3.6) with  $\tilde{Y}_i(\bar{\tau}) = V_i$ . By an argument similar to the proof of (3.10),

$$\langle \tilde{Y}_i(\tau), \tilde{Y}_j(\tau) \rangle = \left( \frac{\tau}{\bar{\tau}} \right)^{2b} \delta_{ij} \quad \forall i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Let  $e_i = \tilde{Y}_i/|\tilde{Y}_i|$ . Then  $\tilde{Y}_i(\tau) = (\tau/\bar{\tau})^b e_i(\tau)$ . By putting  $Y = \tilde{Y}_i$  in (3.7) and summing over  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , by an argument similar to the derivation of (7.10) of [18] in [16], we get (3.8) and the lemma follows.  $\square$

**Lemma 3.3.** *Let  $(q, \bar{\tau}) \in \Omega_p$  and let  $\gamma, X$ , be as in Lemma 3.1. Suppose  $Y(\tau)$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field along  $\gamma$  with  $Y(0) = 0$ . Then*

$$\operatorname{Hess}_{L_p(q, \bar{\tau})}(Y(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau})) = 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_{Y(\bar{\tau})} X(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau}) \rangle.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\alpha : (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow M$  be a curve in  $M$  such that  $\alpha(0) = q, \alpha'(0) = Y(\bar{\tau})$ . Since  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$  is open, by choosing  $\varepsilon > 0$  sufficiently small we may assume without loss of generality that  $\alpha(-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \subset \Omega_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Then for any  $z \in (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  there exists a unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(\alpha(z), \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing geodesic  $\gamma_z : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  which satisfies  $\gamma_z(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma_z(\bar{\tau}) = \alpha(z)$ . Let  $f : [0, \bar{\tau}] \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon) \rightarrow M$  be given by  $f(\tau, z) = \gamma_z(\tau)$  and let

$$\bar{Y}(\tau) = \frac{\partial f}{\partial z}(\tau, 0).$$

Then  $\bar{Y}$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field along  $\gamma$  with  $\bar{Y}(0) = 0$  and  $\bar{Y}(\bar{\tau}) = Y(\bar{\tau})$ . By uniqueness of solution of the O.D.E. for  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field,  $\bar{Y}(\tau) = Y(\tau)$  for any  $0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}$ . By Lemma 1.1, (1.3) holds. Since

$$L_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), \bar{\tau}) = \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), f(\cdot, z), \bar{\tau}) \quad \forall |z| < \varepsilon,$$

differentiating (1.3) with respect to  $z$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d^2}{dz^2} L_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), \bar{\tau}) \\ &= \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \mathcal{L}_p(f(\bar{\tau}, z), f(\cdot, z), \bar{\tau}) \\ &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_z \nabla_\tau f(\bar{\tau}, z), \nabla_z f(\bar{\tau}, z) \rangle + 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_\tau f(\bar{\tau}, z), \nabla_z \nabla_z f(\bar{\tau}, z) \rangle \\ & \quad + \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \langle \nabla_z \nabla_z f, \nabla R - \frac{2p}{\tau} \nabla_\tau f - 2\nabla_\tau \nabla_\tau f - 4\text{Ric}(\nabla_\tau f, \cdot) \rangle d\tau \\ & \quad + \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p \langle \nabla_z f, \nabla_z \{ \nabla R - (2p/\tau) \nabla_\tau f - 2\nabla_\tau \nabla_\tau f - 4\text{Ric}(\nabla_\tau f, \cdot) \} \rangle d\tau \\ (3.16) \quad &= 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_z \nabla_\tau f(\bar{\tau}, z), \nabla_z f(\bar{\tau}, z) \rangle + 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_\tau f(\bar{\tau}, s), \nabla_z \nabla_z f(\bar{\tau}, z) \rangle + I_1 + I_2. \end{aligned}$$

Note that since  $\gamma$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic,  $I_1$  vanishes when  $z = 0$ . Since  $Y(\tau)$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field along  $\gamma$ , by the derivation of the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi equation in the proof of Theorem 2.1,  $I_2$  also vanishes when  $z = 0$ . Hence by putting  $z = 0$  in (3.16), by (3.15),

$$\begin{aligned} & \delta_Y^2 L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = \delta_{\nabla_Y Y} L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) + 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_Y X, Y \rangle \\ \Rightarrow \quad & \text{Hess}_{L_p(q, \bar{\tau})}(Y(\bar{\tau}), Y(\bar{\tau})) = \delta_Y^2 L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) - \delta_{\nabla_Y Y} L_p(q, \bar{\tau}) = 2\bar{\tau}^p \langle \nabla_Y X, Y \rangle. \end{aligned}$$

□

**Lemma 3.4.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ ,  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$ , and let  $b > (1 - p)/2$  be a constant. Then*

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d}{d\tau} \log J_p(v, \bar{\tau}) \\ (3.17) \quad & \leq \frac{b^2 n}{(p + 2b - 1)\bar{\tau}} + \frac{2p - 1}{2\bar{\tau}^{p+2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b-1} R d\tau - \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}^{p+2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b} H(X) d\tau \end{aligned}$$



where the integration is along the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma_v(\tau)$  which satisfies (1.11) and (1.18),  $X(\tau) = \gamma'_v(\tau)$ , and  $H(X)$  is given by (3.9).

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of a similar result for the case  $p = b = 1/2$  in [18] to prove the lemma. Let  $\gamma_v : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies (1.11) and (1.18). Let  $\{V_i\}_{i=1}^n$  be an orthonormal basis of  $T_{\gamma_v(\bar{\tau})}M$  with respect to the metric  $g(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}), \bar{\tau})$ . By Theorem 2.3 for any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , there exists a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -Jacobi field  $Y_i(\tau)$  along  $\gamma_v$  with  $Y_i(0) = 0$  and  $Y_i(\bar{\tau}) = V_i$ . Then by Lemma 3.3,

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y_i|^2(\bar{\tau}) &= 2 \operatorname{Ric}(Y_i(\bar{\tau}), Y_i(\bar{\tau})) + 2 \langle \nabla_{X(\bar{\tau})} Y_i(\bar{\tau}), Y_i(\bar{\tau}) \rangle \\ (3.18) \quad &= 2 \operatorname{Ric}(Y_i(\bar{\tau}), Y_i(\bar{\tau})) + \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^p} \operatorname{Hess}_{L_p(q, \bar{\tau})}(Y_i(\bar{\tau}), Y_i(\bar{\tau})) \quad \forall i = 1, 2, \dots, n. \end{aligned}$$

For any  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , let  $\tilde{Y}_i(\tau)$  be the solution of (3.6) with  $\tilde{Y}_i(\bar{\tau}) = V_i$ . Then by Lemma 3.2 and (3.18),

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y_i|^2(\bar{\tau}) \\ (3.19) \quad &\leq \frac{2b^2}{(p+2b-1)\bar{\tau}} + \frac{2p-1}{\bar{\tau}^p} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p-1} \operatorname{Ric}(\tilde{Y}_i, \tilde{Y}_i) d\tau - \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^p} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^p H(X, \tilde{Y}_i) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Summing (3.19) over  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$ , similar to the proof of Lemma 3.2 we have

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y_i|^2(\bar{\tau}) \\ (3.20) \quad &\leq \frac{2nb^2}{(p+2b-1)\bar{\tau}} + \frac{2p-1}{\bar{\tau}^{p+2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b-1} R d\tau - \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^{p+2b}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{p+2b} H(X) d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Now

$$(3.21) \quad \frac{d}{d\tau} \log J_p(v, \bar{\tau}) = \frac{1}{2|Y_i(\bar{\tau})|^2} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y_i|^2(\bar{\tau}) = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{d}{d\tau} |Y_i|^2(\bar{\tau}).$$

Hence by (3.20) and (3.21) the lemma follows. □

By putting  $b = (1 - p)$  in (3.17) we have

**Corollary 3.1.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Then*

$$(3.22) \quad \frac{d}{d\tau} \log J_p(v, \bar{\tau}) \leq \frac{(1-p)n}{\bar{\tau}} + \frac{2p-1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{1-p} R d\tau - \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \tau^{2-p} H(X) d\tau$$

where the integration is along the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma_v(\tau)$  which satisfies (1.11) and (1.18),  $X(\tau) = \gamma'_v(\tau)$ , and  $H(X)$  is given by (3.9).

**Lemma 3.5.** *Let  $q \in M$  and let  $\tilde{\gamma} : [0, \bar{s}] \rightarrow M$  be a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic satisfying  $\tilde{\gamma}(0) = p_0$  and  $\tilde{\gamma}(\bar{s}) = q$ . Suppose there exists  $s_0 \in (0, \bar{s})$  such that  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_0)$  is  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$ . Then there exists a vector field  $\tilde{Y}_1$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  such that*

$$\delta_{\tilde{Y}_1}^2 \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) < 0.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\tilde{X}(s) = \tilde{\gamma}'(s)$ . Since  $\tilde{\gamma}(s_0)$  is  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}$ , there exists a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field  $\tilde{Y} : [0, s_0] \rightarrow M$  along  $\tilde{\gamma}|_{[0, s_0]}$ ,  $\tilde{Y} \not\equiv 0$ , such that  $\tilde{Y}(0) = 0$  and  $\tilde{Y}(s_0) = 0$ . Since  $\tilde{Y} \not\equiv 0$ ,  $\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0) \neq 0$ . Let  $W$  be a parallel vector field along  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with respect to the metric  $\tilde{g}(s_0) = g(s_0^{1/(1-p)})$  such that  $W(s_0) = \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)$ . Let

$$\tilde{Y}_0(s) = \begin{cases} \tilde{Y}(s) & \forall 0 \leq s \leq s_0 \\ 0 & \forall s_0 < s \leq \bar{s}. \end{cases}$$

Let  $h \in (0, \min(s_0, \bar{s} - s_0)/2)$  be a constant to be determined later. We choose  $\phi \in C^\infty(\mathbb{R})$ ,  $0 \leq \phi \leq 1$  on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ , such that  $\phi(s) = 0$  for all  $|s - s_0| \geq h$  and  $\phi(s_0) = 1$ . Let  $\tilde{Y}_1(s) = \tilde{Y}_0(s) + \lambda\phi W(s)$  where  $\lambda \in \mathbb{R}$  is some constant to be determined later. Let  $\tilde{f} : [0, \bar{s}] \times (-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  be a variation of  $\tilde{\gamma}$  with respect to  $\tilde{Y}_1$  such that  $\tilde{f}(0, z) = p_0$  on  $(-\varepsilon, \varepsilon)$  and  $\tilde{f}(s, 0) = \tilde{\gamma}(s)$  for any  $0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}$  given by Proposition 2.2 of Chapter 9 of [1]. By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 1.2 (1.9) holds. Differentiating (1.9) with respect to  $z$ , by the same argument as the proof of (2.6),

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(\tilde{f}(\bar{s}, z), \tilde{f}(\cdot, z), \bar{s}) \\ &= \frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \langle \nabla_z \nabla_z \tilde{f}, s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} - 2(1-p)^2 \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{f} - 4(1-p) s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \cdot) \rangle ds \\ & \quad - 2(1-p) \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla_z \left\{ \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{f} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} \right. \right. \\ & \quad \left. \left. + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \cdot) \right\} \right\rangle ds \\ (3.23) \quad &= I_1(z) - 2(1-p)I_2(z) \end{aligned}$$

where  $I_1(z)$  is equal to

$$\frac{1}{1-p} \int_0^{\bar{s}} \langle \nabla_z \nabla_z \tilde{f}, s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla \tilde{R} - 2(1-p)^2 \nabla_s \nabla_s \tilde{f} - 4(1-p) s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \cdot) \rangle ds$$

and

$$I_2(z) = \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla_s \nabla_s \nabla_z \tilde{f} + \tilde{R}(\nabla_z \tilde{f}, \nabla_s \tilde{f}) \nabla_s \tilde{f} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_z (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_z (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_s \tilde{f}, \cdot)) \right\rangle ds.$$

Since  $\tilde{\gamma}$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic,

$$(3.24) \quad I_1(0) = 0.$$

Since  $\tilde{Y}$  is a  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -Jacobi field on  $[0, s_0]$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} I_2(0) &= \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W) + \tilde{R}(\tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W, \tilde{X}) \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W} (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W} (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot)) \right\rangle ds \\ &= \lambda \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \tilde{Y}_0 + \lambda \phi W, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\phi W) + \phi \tilde{R}(W, \tilde{X}) \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot)) \right\rangle ds \\ (3.25) \quad &= \lambda I_{2,1} + \lambda^2 I_{2,2} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$(3.26) \quad \begin{aligned} I_{2,1} &= \int_0^{s_0} \left\langle \tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\phi W) + \phi \tilde{R}(W, \tilde{X}) \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot)) \right\rangle ds \end{aligned}$$

and

$$(3.27) \quad \begin{aligned} I_{2,2} &= \int_0^{\bar{s}} \left\langle \phi W, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\phi W) + \phi \tilde{R}(W, \tilde{X}) \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \phi \nabla_W (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot)) \right\rangle ds. \end{aligned}$$

Now by (1.8),

$$\begin{aligned}
& \int_0^{s_0} \langle \tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W) \rangle ds \\
&= \int_0^{s_0} \left\{ \frac{d}{ds} \langle \tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W) \rangle - \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W) \rangle \right. \\
&\quad \left. - \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W)) \right\} ds \\
&= - \int_0^{s_0} \left\{ \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W) \rangle + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W)) \right\} ds \\
&= - \int_0^{s_0} \left\{ \frac{d}{ds} \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \phi W \rangle - \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \phi W \rangle - \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \phi \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W) \right. \\
&\quad \left. + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W)) \right\} ds \\
&= -|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2 + \int_0^{s_0} \left\{ \phi \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W \rangle + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \phi \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W) \right. \\
(3.28) \quad &\quad \left. - \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W)) \right\} ds.
\end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\begin{aligned}
& s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \nabla_{\tilde{X}}(\phi W)) \\
&= \frac{d}{ds} (s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \phi W)) - \frac{p}{1-p} s^{\frac{2p-1}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, \phi W) - s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \frac{\partial}{\partial s} (\widetilde{\text{Ric}})(\tilde{Y}, \phi W) \\
(3.29) \quad &\quad - s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\widetilde{\text{Ric}})(\tilde{Y}, \phi W) - s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, \phi W)
\end{aligned}$$

By (3.26), (3.28), and (3.29),

$$(3.30) \quad I_{2,1} = -|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2 + \int_{s_0-h}^{s_0} \phi G(W, \tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) ds$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
& G(W, \tilde{X}, \tilde{Y}) \\
&= \left\langle \tilde{Y}, \tilde{R}(W, \tilde{X}) \tilde{X} - \frac{1}{2(1-p)^2} s^{\frac{2p}{1-p}} \nabla_W (\nabla \tilde{R}) + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_W (\widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{X}, \cdot)) \right\rangle \\
&\quad + \langle \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W \rangle + \frac{2}{1-p} s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W) \\
&\quad + \frac{2}{1-p} \left\{ \frac{p}{1-p} s^{\frac{2p-1}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\tilde{Y}, W) + s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \frac{\partial}{\partial s} (\widetilde{\text{Ric}})(\tilde{Y}, W) \right. \\
&\quad \left. + s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \nabla_{\tilde{X}} (\widetilde{\text{Ric}})(\tilde{Y}, W) + s^{\frac{p}{1-p}} \widetilde{\text{Ric}}(\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}, W) \right\}.
\end{aligned}$$

Let  $C_1 = 1 + \max_{0 \leq s \leq \bar{s}} |G(W, \tilde{X}, \tilde{Y})|$  and let

$$h = \frac{|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2}{2C_1}.$$

Then by (3.30),

$$(3.31) \quad I_{2,1} \leq -\frac{1}{2} |\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2.$$

We now choose  $\lambda < 0$  such that  $0 > \lambda > -|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2 / [4(1 + |I_{2,2}|)]$ . Then by putting  $z = 0$  in (3.23), by (3.24), (3.25), and (3.31),

$$\delta_{\tilde{Y}_1}^2 \tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p(q, \tilde{\gamma}, \bar{s}) \leq |\lambda|(1-p)(-|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2) + 2\lambda I_{2,2} \leq \lambda(1-p)|\nabla_{\tilde{X}} \tilde{Y}(s_0)|^2 / 2 < 0$$

and the lemma follows. □

As a consequence of Lemma 3.5 and the equivalence of the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic and  $\tilde{\mathcal{L}}_p$ -geodesic by relations (1.4), (1.5), we have

**Corollary 3.2.** *Let  $q \in M$  and let  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ . Suppose there exists  $\tau_0 \in (0, \bar{\tau})$  such that  $\gamma(\tau_0)$  is  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\gamma$ . Then there exists a vector field  $Y_1$  along  $\gamma$  such that*

$$\delta_{Y_1}^2 \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) < 0.$$

By an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 3.5 and Corollary 3.2 we have

**Lemma 3.6.** *Let  $q \in M$  and let  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ . Suppose there exists  $\tau_0 \in (0, \bar{\tau})$  such that  $q$  is  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $\gamma(\tau_0)$  along  $\gamma|_{[\tau_0, \bar{\tau}]}$ . Then there exists a vector field  $Y_1$  along  $\gamma$  such that*

$$\delta_{Y_1}^2 \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}) < 0.$$

**Corollary 3.3.**

$$U'_p(\tau_2) \subset U'_p(\tau_1) \quad \forall 0 < \tau_1 < \tau_2 < t_0.$$

*Proof.* Let  $0 < \tau_1 < \tau_2 < t_0$ . Let  $v \in U'_p(\tau_2)$ . Then  $\gamma_v(\tau_2) \in \Omega_p(\tau_2)$  where  $\gamma_v(\cdot) = \gamma(\cdot; v) : [0, \tau_2] \rightarrow M$  is the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic that satisfies (1.18). By the definition of  $\Omega_p(\tau_2)$ ,  $\gamma(\cdot; v)$  is the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(\gamma_v(\tau_2), \tau_2)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic joining  $p_0$  and  $\gamma_v(\tau_2)$  and  $\gamma_v(\tau_2)$  is not  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\gamma_v$ . By an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.2 of chapter 13 of [1],  $\gamma(\cdot; v)|_{[0, \tau_1]}$  is the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(\gamma_v(\tau_1), \tau_1)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic joining  $p_0$  and  $\gamma_v(\tau_1)$ . Suppose  $\gamma_v(\tau_1)$  is  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\gamma_v(\cdot)|_{[0, \tau_1]}$ . Then by Corollary 3.2  $\gamma_v$  is not a  $\mathcal{L}_p(\gamma_v(\tau_2), \tau_2)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic.

Contradiction arises. Hence  $\gamma_v(\tau_1)$  is not  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -conjugate to  $p_0$  along  $\gamma(\cdot; v)|_{[0, \tau_1]}$ . Thus  $v \in U'_p(\tau_1)$  and the lemma follows.  $\square$

By Lemma 3.6 and an argument similar to the proof of Corollary 3.3 we have

**Corollary 3.4.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $q \in M$ . Suppose  $\gamma : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  is the  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies  $\gamma(0) = p_0$ ,  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ , given by Theorem 1.2. Then  $q \in \Omega_{\tau_1, p}^{\gamma(\tau_1)}(\bar{\tau})$  for any  $0 < \tau_1 < \bar{\tau}$ .*

**Corollary 3.5.** *By Corollary 3.4 and an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.15 of [25], (3.2), (3.7), (3.8), (3.17), (3.22), etc. in this section holds in  $M \times (0, t_0)$  in the barrier sense of Perelman [18].*

#### 4. Monotonicity property of the generalized reduced volume $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$

In this section we will prove the monotonicity property of the generalized reduced volume  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$  for  $1/2 \leq p < 1$ . We first start with a lemma.

**Lemma 4.1.** *Suppose  $M$  has nonnegative curvature operator in  $(0, T)$ . Then for any  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$ ,  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$ , there exists a constant  $C_1 = C_1(v, \bar{\tau}) > 0$  such that*

$$(4.1) \quad \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \tau^{-(1-p)n} e^{-C_1\tau} J_p(v, \tau) \right) \leq 0 \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}$$

and

$$(4.2) \quad \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0^+} \tau^{-(1-p)n} J_p(v, \tau) = (1-p)^{-n}.$$

Hence

$$(4.3) \quad \tau^{-(1-p)n} e^{-C_1\tau} J_p(v, \tau) \leq (1-p)^{-n} \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}.$$

If  $M$  also has uniformly bounded scalar curvature on  $(0, T)$ , then we can take

$$(4.4) \quad C_1 = \left( \frac{(2p-1)_+}{2(2-p)} + \frac{t_0}{2(2-p)(t_0 - \bar{\tau})} \right) \|R\|_{L^\infty}.$$

*Proof.* Let  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$  and let  $\gamma_v : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  be the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic which satisfies (1.18). We extend  $\gamma_v$  to a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $[0, \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon)$  for some constant  $\varepsilon \in (0, t_0 - \bar{\tau})$ . Let

$$r_1 = \sup_{0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon} d_0(p_0, \gamma_v(\tau))$$

and let

$$C_1 = \left\{ \frac{(2p-1)_+}{2(2-p)} + \frac{\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon}{2\varepsilon(2-p)} \right\} \sup_{\substack{q \in B_0(p_0, r_1) \\ 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau} + \varepsilon}} |R(q, \tau)|.$$

If  $M$  also has uniformly bounded scalar curvature on  $(0, T)$ , by Corollary 1.1 we can choose  $\varepsilon = t_0 - \bar{\tau}$  and let  $C_1$  be given by (4.4). Since  $M$  is complete with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$  for any  $\tau \in (0, t_0)$ ,  $\overline{B_0(p_0, r_1)} \times [0, \bar{\tau}]$  is compact. Hence  $C_1 < \infty$ . Let  $H(X)$  be given by (3.9). Since  $M$  has nonnegative curvature operator in  $(0, T)$ , as observed by Perelman [18] by Hamilton's Harnack inequality for the solutions of Ricci flow [8],

$$(4.5) \quad H(X(\tau)) \geq -\left(\frac{1}{\tau} + \frac{1}{\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon - \tau}\right)R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) \geq -\frac{\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon}{\tau(\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon - \tau)}R(\gamma(\tau), \tau)$$

for any  $0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}$ . Since  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$ , by Corollary 3.3  $v \in U'_p(\tau)$  for any  $0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}$ . Hence by Corollary 3.1 and (4.5),

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d}{d\tau} \log J_p(v, \tau) \\ & \leq \frac{(1-p)n}{\tau} + \frac{2p-1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} R d\rho - \frac{1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{2-p} H(X) d\rho \\ & \leq \frac{(1-p)n}{\tau} + \frac{2p-1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} R d\rho + \frac{\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \frac{\rho^{1-p}}{\bar{\tau} + \varepsilon - \rho} R d\rho \\ & \leq \frac{(1-p)n}{\tau} + C_1 \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\frac{d}{d\tau} \log \left( \tau^{-(1-p)n} e^{-C_1\tau} J_p(v, \tau) \right) \leq 0 \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \bar{\tau}$$

and (4.1) follows. Let  $\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(s) = \gamma_v(\tau)$  and let  $\tilde{J}_p(v, s) = J_p(v, \tau)$  where  $\tilde{v} = v/(1-p)$  and  $s = \tau^{1-p}$ . Then  $\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(s)$  satisfies (1.10) and (1.13) in  $(0, \bar{s})$  where  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . We write

$$\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}(s) = (\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^1(s), \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^2(s), \dots, \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^n(s))$$

and

$$v = (v^1, v^2, \dots, v^n)$$

in the normal coordinate system around  $p_0$  with respect to the metric  $g(p_0, 0)$ . Differentiating (1.13) with respect to  $v^j$ ,  $j = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ,

$$\begin{cases} \frac{\partial \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^i}{\partial v^j}(0) = 0 & \forall i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n \\ \frac{d}{ds} \left( \frac{\partial \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^i}{\partial v^j} \right) (0) = \frac{\delta_j^i}{1-p} & \forall i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n. \end{cases}$$

Hence there exists  $s_0 \in (0, \bar{s})$  and functions  $\varepsilon_j^i(s)$  such that  $\varepsilon_j^i(s) \rightarrow 0$  as  $s \rightarrow 0$  for all  $i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n$  and

$$(4.6) \quad \frac{\partial \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^i}{\partial v^j}(s) = \frac{\delta_j^i + \varepsilon_j^i(s)}{1-p} s \quad \forall i, j = 1, 2, \dots, n.$$

Since  $\sqrt{g(p_0, 0)} = 1$  in the normal coordinates around  $p_0$ , by (4.6)

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{J}_p(v, s) &= \sqrt{g(p_0, s^{\frac{1}{1-p}})} \det\left(\frac{\partial \tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}^i}{\partial v^j}(s)\right) \\ &= \frac{s^n}{(1-p)^n} \sqrt{g(p_0, s^{\frac{1}{1-p}})} \det(\delta_j^i + \varepsilon_j^i(s)) \\ \Rightarrow \lim_{s \rightarrow 0^+} s^{-n} \tilde{J}_p(v, s) &= \frac{1}{(1-p)^n} \lim_{s \rightarrow 0^+} \det(\delta_j^i + \varepsilon_j^i(s)) = (1-p)^{-n} \end{aligned}$$

and (4.2) follows. By (4.1) and (4.2), (4.3) follows. □

**Lemma 4.2.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} \in (0, t_0)$  and  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau})$ . Suppose  $\gamma_v : [0, \bar{\tau}] \rightarrow M$  is the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic that satisfies (1.18). Then*

$$(4.7) \quad \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0^+} l_p(\gamma_v(\tau), \tau) = |v|^2.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\bar{s} = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}$ . Let  $r_1 > 0$ ,  $\tilde{v}$ , and  $\tilde{\gamma}_{\tilde{v}}$  be as in the proof of Lemma 4.1 and let

$$K_1 = \sup_{\substack{q \in B_0(p_0, r_1) \\ 0 \leq \tau \leq \bar{\tau}}} (|R| + |\nabla R| + |\text{Ric}|).$$

Now

$$\begin{aligned} (4.8) \quad &l_p(\gamma_v(\tau), \tau) \\ &= \frac{1-p}{\tau^{1-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^p R(\gamma_v(\rho), \rho) d\rho + \frac{1-p}{\tau^{1-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^p |\gamma'_v(\rho)|^2 d\rho = I_1(\tau) + I_2(\tau) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$(4.9) \quad |I_1(\tau)| \leq \frac{1-p}{1+p} K_1 \tau^{2p} \rightarrow 0 \quad \text{as } \tau \rightarrow 0.$$

By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 1.4, there exist constants  $C_2 > 0$ ,  $C_3 > 0$ , such that (1.17) holds on  $[0, \bar{s}]$ . Then by (1.17),

$$\begin{aligned} (4.10) \quad &\int_0^\tau \frac{e^{-C_2\rho}}{\rho^p} (|v|^2 - C'_3 e^{C_2\rho} \rho^{1+2p}) d\rho \leq \int_0^\tau \rho^p |\gamma'_v(\rho)|^2 d\rho \\ &\leq \int_0^\tau \frac{e^{C_2\rho}}{\rho^p} (|v|^2 + C'_3 \rho^{1+2p}) d\rho \end{aligned}$$

where  $C'_3 = (1-p)^2 C_3$ . Now

$$(4.11) \quad \int_0^\tau \frac{e^{C_2\rho}}{\rho^p} (|v|^2 + C'_3 \rho^{1+2p}) d\rho \leq e^{C_2\tau} \left( \frac{\tau^{1-p}}{1-p} |v|^2 + C'_3 \frac{\tau^{2+p}}{2+p} \right)$$

and

$$(4.12) \quad \int_0^\tau \frac{e^{-C_2\rho}}{\rho^p} (|v|^2 - C'_3 e^{C_2\rho} \rho^{1+2p}) d\rho \geq \frac{\tau^{1-p}}{1-p} e^{-C_2\tau} |v|^2 - C'_3 \frac{\tau^{2+p}}{2+p}$$



By (4.10), (4.11), and (4.12),

$$(4.13) \quad \begin{aligned} e^{-C_2\tau}|v|^2 - C'_3 \frac{1-p}{2+p} \tau^{1+2p} &\leq \frac{1-p}{\tau^{1-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^p |\gamma'_v(\rho)|^2 d\rho \\ &\leq e^{C_2\tau} \left( |v|^2 + C'_3 \frac{1-p}{2+p} \tau^{1+2p} \right). \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $\tau \rightarrow 0$  in (4.13),

$$(4.14) \quad \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0^+} I_2(\tau) = |v|^2.$$

By (4.8), (4.9), and (4.14), we get (4.7). □

**Theorem 4.1.** *Suppose  $M$  has nonnegative curvature operator with respect to the metric  $g(\tau)$  for any  $\tau \in [0, T)$ . Suppose  $M$  also has uniformly bounded scalar curvature on  $M \times (0, T)$  when  $1/2 < p < 1$ . Let  $A_0 = 0$  if  $p = 1/2$ . For any  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $0 < c < 1$ , let*

$$(4.15) \quad A_0 = \left( \frac{(2p-1)_+}{2(2-p)} + \frac{1}{2(2-p)c} \right) \|R\|_{L^\infty}$$

and let  $\tau_0$  be given by (0.2). Then

$$(4.16) \quad e^{-A_0\tau_2} \tilde{V}_p(\tau_2) \leq e^{-A_0\tau_1} \tilde{V}_p(\tau_1) \leq (\sqrt{\pi}/(1-p))^n$$

for any  $0 < \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 < \bar{\tau}_1$  and  $1/2 \leq p < 1$  where  $\bar{\tau}_1 = (1-c)\tau_0$  if  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $\bar{\tau}_1 = t_0$  if  $p = 1/2$ .

*Proof.* Let  $p \in [1/2, 1)$ ,  $0 < \tau_2 < \bar{\tau}_1$ , and  $v \in U'_p(\tau_2)$ . Let  $\gamma = \gamma_v : [0, \tau_2] \rightarrow M$  be the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic that satisfies (1.18) and let  $X(\tau) = \gamma'(\tau)$ . By Corollary 3.3 and its proof,  $v \in U'_p(\tau)$  for any  $0 < \tau \leq \tau_2$  and  $\gamma|_{[0, \tau]}$  is the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(\gamma_v(\tau), \tau)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic between  $p_0$  and  $\gamma_v(\tau)$  for any  $0 < \tau \leq \tau_2$ . Hence  $L_p(\gamma(\tau), \tau) = \mathcal{L}_p(\gamma(\tau), \gamma, \tau)$  and

$$(4.17) \quad \frac{dL_p}{d\tau}(\gamma(\tau), \tau) = \frac{d}{d\tau} \mathcal{L}_p(\gamma(\tau), \gamma, \tau) = \tau^p (R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) + |X(\tau)|^2) \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \tau_2.$$

When there is no ambiguity we will write  $R$ ,  $X$ ,  $L_p$ , and  $l_p$  for  $R(\gamma(\tau), \tau)$ ,  $X(\tau)$ ,  $L_p(\gamma(\tau), \tau)$ , and  $l_p(\gamma(\tau), \tau)$ . Then

$$(4.18) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{dl_p}{d\tau}(\gamma(\tau), \tau) &= \frac{(1-p)}{\tau^{1-p}} \frac{dL_p}{d\tau}(\gamma(\tau), \tau) - \frac{(1-p)^2}{\tau^{2-p}} L_p(\gamma(\tau), \tau) \\ &= \frac{(1-p)}{\tau^{2-p}} [\tau^{p+1}(R + |X|^2) - (1-p)L_p] \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \tau_2. \end{aligned}$$

Now by (1.11),

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{d}{d\tau}(R + |X|^2) \\
 &= R_\tau + \langle X, \nabla R \rangle + 2\langle X, \nabla_X X \rangle + 2 \operatorname{Ric}(X, X) \\
 &= R_\tau + \langle X, \nabla R \rangle + \langle X, \nabla R - \frac{2p}{\tau}X - 4 \operatorname{Ric}(X, \cdot) \rangle + 2 \operatorname{Ric}(X, X) \\
 &= R_\tau + 2\langle X, \nabla R \rangle - 2 \operatorname{Ric}(X, X) - \frac{2p}{\tau}|X|^2 \\
 (4.19) \quad &= -H(X) - \frac{2p}{\tau}(R + |X|^2) + \frac{2p-1}{\tau}R
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $H(X)$  is given by (3.9). Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{d}{d\tau}[\tau^{p+1}(R + |X|^2)] \\
 &= \tau^{p+1} \left\{ \frac{d}{d\tau}(R + |X|^2) + \frac{(p+1)}{\tau}(R + |X|^2) \right\} \\
 &= \tau^{p+1} \left\{ -H(X) - \frac{2p}{\tau}(R + |X|^2) + \frac{2p-1}{\tau}R + \frac{(p+1)}{\tau}(R + |X|^2) \right\} \\
 (4.20) \quad &= -\tau^{p+1}H(X) + (1-p)\tau^p(R + |X|^2) + (2p-1)\tau^p R \quad \forall 0 < \tau \leq \tau_2.
 \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$(4.21) \quad \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} \tau^{p+1}|X|^2 = 0$$

by (1.18), integrating (4.20) over  $(0, \tau)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \tau^{p+1}(R + |X|^2) = - \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1}H(X) d\rho + (1-p)L_p + (2p-1) \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho \\
 (4.22) \quad & \Rightarrow (1-p)L_p - \tau^{p+1}(R + |X|^2) = \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1}H(X) d\rho - (2p-1) \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho
 \end{aligned}$$

for any  $0 < \tau \leq \tau_2$ . Let

$$Z_p(v, \tau) = \tau^{-(1-p)n} e^{-l_p(\gamma_v(\tau), \tau)} e^{-A_0\tau} J_p(v, \tau).$$

By Corollary 3.1, (4.18), and (4.22),  $\forall 0 < \tau \leq \tau_2$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \frac{d}{d\tau} \log Z_p(v, \tau) \\
 &= \frac{2p-1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} R d\rho - \frac{1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{2-p} H(X) d\rho - A_0 \\
 &+ \frac{(1-p)}{\tau^{2-p}} \left\{ \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1} H(X) d\rho - (2p-1) \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho \right\} \\
 (4.23) \quad & \leq \frac{2p-1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} R d\rho - A_0 - \frac{1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{2-p} (1 - 2(1-p)\rho^{2p-1}) H(X) d\rho.
 \end{aligned}$$

When  $p = 1/2$ , the right hand side of (4.23) is  $\leq 0$ . When  $1/2 < p < 1$ , by Corollary 1.1 we can extend  $\gamma$  to a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $(0, (1 - c)\tau_0)$ . Since  $\tau_2 < (1 - c)\tau_0$ , by the Hamilton's Harnack inequality [8] and an argument similar to the proof of (4.5),

$$(4.24) \quad H(X(\tau)) \geq -\frac{1}{c\tau}R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) \quad \forall 0 < \tau < (1 - c)\tau_0$$

By (4.24) when  $1/2 < p < 1$ , the right hand side of (4.23) is bounded above by

$$\leq \frac{2p - 1}{2\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} R d\rho - A_0 + \frac{1}{2c\tau^{2-p}} \int_0^\tau \rho^{1-p} (1 - 2(1 - p)\rho^{2p-1}) R d\rho \leq 0$$

for any  $0 < \tau < (1 - c)\tau_0$ . Hence by Corollary 3.3 and (4.23),

$$\begin{aligned} Z_p(v, \tau_2) &\leq Z_p(v, \tau_1) \quad \forall 0 < \tau_1 \leq \tau_2, v \in U'_p(\tau_2) \\ \Rightarrow \int_{U'_p(\tau_2)} Z_p(v, \tau_2) dv &\leq \int_{U'_p(\tau_2)} Z_p(v, \tau_1) dv \leq \int_{U'_p(\tau_1)} Z_p(v, \tau_1) dv \end{aligned}$$

for any  $0 < \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 < \bar{\tau}_1$ . Hence

$$(4.25) \quad e^{-A_0\tau_2} \tilde{V}_p(\tau_2) \leq e^{-A_0\tau_1} \tilde{V}_p(\tau_1) \quad \forall 0 < \tau_1 \leq \tau_2 < \bar{\tau}_1.$$

By (4.25), Lemma 4.1, Lemma 4.2, and the monotone convergence theorem, (4.26)

$$e^{-A_0\tau_2} \tilde{V}_p(\tau_2) \leq \int_{U'_p(\tau_2)} \lim_{\tau \rightarrow 0} Z_p(v, \tau) dv \leq (1-p)^{-n} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-|v|^2} dv = (\sqrt{\pi}/(1-p))^n$$

holds for any  $0 < \tau_2 < \tau_0$ . By (4.25) and (4.26) we get (4.16) and the lemma follows. □

### 5. Monotonicity Property of the rescaled generalized reduced volume

In this section we will assume that  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient solution of the Ricci flow in  $(-\infty, 0)$ . We will fix a point  $(p_0, t_0) \in M \times (-\infty, 0)$  and let  $g$  and  $\bar{g}$  be related by (0.5). Unless stated otherwise we will also assume that  $M$  has nonnegative curvature operator with respect to  $g(\tau)$  for any  $0 \leq \tau < \infty$ . We will consider the  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -length,  $L_p$ -distance,  $\tilde{V}_p(\tau)$ , etc. all with respect to this point  $(p_0, t_0)$ . We will derive various scaling properties of these geometric quantities in this section. For any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ , let

$$g^{\bar{\tau}}(\tau) = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}} g(\bar{\tau}\tau) \quad \forall \tau \geq 0.$$

and let  $R^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau)$  be the scalar curvature of  $M$  at  $q$  with respect to the metric  $g^{\bar{\tau}}(\tau)$ . We also let  $\mathcal{L}_p^{\bar{\tau}}, L_p^{\bar{\tau}}, l_p^{\bar{\tau}}, V_p^{\bar{\tau}}$  be the corresponding  $\mathcal{L}_p, L_p, l_p, V_p$  functions with respect to the metric  $g^{\bar{\tau}}$ . Note that

$$R^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) = \bar{\tau} R(q, \bar{\tau}\tau) \quad \forall q \in M, \tau, \bar{\tau} > 0.$$

For any curve  $\gamma$  in  $M$  we let  $\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}$  be the curve in  $M$  given by  $\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) = \gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho)$ .

**Lemma 5.1.** *Let  $\gamma : (\tau_1, \tau_2) \rightarrow M$  be a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic in  $(\tau_1, \tau_2)$ . Then for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ ,  $\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic with respect to  $g^{\bar{\tau}}$  in  $(\tau_1/\bar{\tau}, \tau_2/\bar{\tau})$ . If  $\tau_1 = 0$  and  $\gamma$  satisfies (1.18) for some  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ , then  $\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}$  satisfies (1.18) with  $v$  being replaced by  $\bar{\tau}^{1-p}v$ .*

*Proof.* Let  $X(\tau) = X(\gamma(\tau)) = \gamma'(\tau)$  and let  $X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) = X^{\bar{\tau}}(\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)) = \gamma^{\bar{\tau}'}(\rho)$ . Then  $X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) = \bar{\tau}X(\bar{\tau}\rho)$ , and  $\forall \tau_1 < \rho < \tau_2, Y \in T_{\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho)}M$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} (\nabla_X X)(\bar{\tau}\rho) &= \frac{D}{d\tau}X(\bar{\tau}\rho) = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}}\frac{D}{d\rho}X(\bar{\tau}\rho) = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^2}(\nabla_{X^{\bar{\tau}}}X^{\bar{\tau}})(\rho) \\ (5.1) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \langle \nabla_X X(\bar{\tau}\rho), Y \rangle_{g(\bar{\tau}\rho)} &= \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}}\langle \nabla_{X^{\bar{\tau}}}X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho), Y \rangle_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}, \end{aligned}$$

$$(5.2) \quad \begin{cases} \text{Ric}_{g(\bar{\tau}\rho)}(X(\bar{\tau}\rho), Y) = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}}\text{Ric}_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}(X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho), Y) \\ \langle \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}\rho}X(\bar{\tau}\rho), Y \rangle_{g(\bar{\tau}\rho)} = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}}\langle \frac{1}{2\rho}X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho), Y \rangle_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)} \\ \langle \nabla R(\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho), Y \rangle_{g(\bar{\tau}\rho)} = \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}}\langle \nabla R^{\bar{\tau}}(\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho), \rho), Y \rangle_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}. \end{cases}$$

Since  $\gamma$  satisfies (1.11) in  $(\tau_1, \tau_2)$ , by (1.11), (5.1), and (5.2),  $\forall \tau_1 < \rho < \tau_2, Y \in T_{\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho)}M$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} &\left\langle \nabla_{X^{\bar{\tau}}}X^{\bar{\tau}} - \frac{1}{2}\nabla R^{\bar{\tau}} + \frac{p}{\rho}X^{\bar{\tau}} + 2\text{Ric}_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}(X^{\bar{\tau}}, \cdot), Y \right\rangle_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)} = 0 \\ \Rightarrow \quad \nabla_{X^{\bar{\tau}}}X^{\bar{\tau}} - \frac{1}{2}\nabla R^{\bar{\tau}} + \frac{p}{\rho}X^{\bar{\tau}} + 2\text{Ric}_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}(X^{\bar{\tau}}, \cdot) &= 0 \quad \forall \tau_1 < \rho < \tau_2. \end{aligned}$$

If  $\tau_1 = 0$  and  $\gamma$  satisfies (1.18) for some  $v \in T_{p_0}M$ , then

$$\lim_{\rho \rightarrow 0} \rho^p X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) = \lim_{\rho \rightarrow 0} \rho^p \bar{\tau}X(\bar{\tau}\rho) = \bar{\tau}^{1-p} \lim_{\rho \rightarrow 0} (\bar{\tau}\rho)^p X(\bar{\tau}\rho) = \bar{\tau}^{1-p}v$$

and the lemma follows. □

**Lemma 5.2.** *For any  $q \in M, \bar{\tau} > 0, \tau > 0$ , the following holds.*

- (i)  $L_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) = \frac{L_p(q, \bar{\tau}\tau)}{\bar{\tau}^p}$
- (ii)  $\bar{l}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) = \bar{\tau}^{1-2p}l_p(q, \bar{\tau}\tau)$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau}\tau)$ . Then  $\gamma^{\bar{\tau}} \in \mathcal{F}(q, \tau)$ . Let  $X$  and  $X^{\bar{\tau}}$  be as in the proof of Lemma 5.1. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \gamma^{\bar{\tau}}, \tau) &= \int_0^\tau \rho^p (R^{\bar{\tau}}(\gamma^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho), \rho) + |X^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)|_{g^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)}^2) d\rho \\ &= \int_0^\tau \rho^p (\bar{\tau}R(\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho) + \bar{\tau}|X(\bar{\tau}\rho)|_{g(\bar{\tau}\rho)}^2) d\rho \\ &= \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^p} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\tau} z^p (R(\gamma(z), z) + |X(z)|_{g(z)}^2) dz \\ (5.3) \quad &= \frac{1}{\bar{\tau}^p} \mathcal{L}_p(q, \gamma, \bar{\tau}\tau) \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau}\tau) \iff \gamma^{\bar{\tau}} \in \mathcal{F}(q, \tau),$$

by taking infimum in (5.3) over  $\gamma \in \mathcal{F}(q, \bar{\tau}\tau)$ , (i) follows. By (0.6) and (i), (ii) follows. □

**Lemma 5.3.** *There exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that*

$$(5.4) \quad |\nabla^{g^{\bar{\tau}(\tau)}} l_p^{\bar{\tau}}|^2(q, \tau) + 4 \frac{(1-p)^2}{\tau^2(1-2p)} R^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) \leq \frac{C}{\tau^2(1-p)} l_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau)$$

for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0, \tau > 0$  and  $q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\tau)$ .

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of this result for the case  $p = 1/2$  and  $\bar{\tau} = 1$  in [18] to prove the lemma. We will first prove (5.4) for the case  $\bar{\tau} = 1$ . Let  $\tau > 0$ , and  $q \in \Omega_p(\tau)$ . By Theorem 1.2 there exists a unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(q, \tau)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic  $\gamma$  satisfying  $\gamma(0) = p_0, \gamma(\tau) = q$ . Let  $X(\rho) = \gamma'(\rho)$  for any  $\rho \in [0, \tau]$ . Choose  $\tau_0 > 2\tau$ . Then  $\tau < \tau_0/2$  and (4.24) holds with  $c = 1/2$ . Hence by (4.22) and (4.24),

$$(5.5) \quad \begin{aligned} (R(q, \tau) + |X(\tau)|^2) &\leq \frac{1}{\tau^{p+1}} \left( C_1 L_p(q, \tau) - \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1} H(X) d\rho \right) \\ &\leq \frac{1}{\tau^{p+1}} \left( C_1 L_p(q, \tau) + 2 \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho \right) \\ &\leq \frac{C_1 + 2}{\tau^{p+1}} L_p(q, \tau) \end{aligned}$$

where  $H(X)$  is given by (3.9) and

$$C_1 = \begin{cases} (1-p) & \text{if } 0 < p < 1/2 \\ p & \text{if } 1/2 \leq p < 1. \end{cases}$$

Then by (0.6), (3.1), (5.5),

$$(5.6) \quad \begin{aligned} |\nabla l_p(q, \tau)|^2 &= \frac{(1-p)^2}{\tau^2(1-p)} |\nabla L_p(q, \tau)|^2 \\ &= \frac{(1-p)^2}{\tau^2(1-p)} [4\tau^{2p} (|X(\tau)|^2 + R(q, \tau)) - 4\tau^{2p} R(q, \tau)] \\ &\leq \frac{(1-p)^2}{\tau^2(1-p)} \left( \frac{4C'_1}{\tau^{1-p}} L_p(q, \tau) - 4\tau^{2p} R(q, \tau) \right) \\ &\leq \frac{4(1-p)C'_1}{\tau^2(1-p)} l_p(q, \tau) - \frac{4(1-p)^2}{\tau^2(1-2p)} R(q, \tau) \quad \forall \tau > 0, q \in \Omega_p(\tau) \end{aligned}$$

where  $C'_1 = C_1 + 2$ . Hence by (5.6) and Lemma 5.2 for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0, \tau > 0, q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\tau)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} |\nabla g^{\bar{\tau}(\tau)} l_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau)|^2 &= \bar{\tau} \cdot \bar{\tau}^{2(1-2p)} |\nabla l_p(q, \bar{\tau}\tau)|^2 \\ &\leq \bar{\tau}^{3-4p} \left( \frac{4(1-p)C'_1}{(\bar{\tau}\tau)^{2(1-p)}} l_p(q, \bar{\tau}\tau) - \frac{4(1-p)^2}{(\bar{\tau}\tau)^{2(1-2p)}} R(q, \bar{\tau}\tau) \right) \\ &\leq \frac{4(1-p)C'_1}{\tau^{2(1-p)}} l_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) - \frac{4(1-p)^2}{\tau^{2(1-2p)}} R^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau) \end{aligned}$$

and (5.4) follows. □

**Lemma 5.4.** *There exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that*

$$(5.7) \quad \left| \frac{\partial l_p^{\bar{\tau}}}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) \right| \leq C \frac{l_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \tau)}{\tau} \quad \forall \bar{\tau} > 0, \tau > 0, q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\tau).$$

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of this result for the case  $p = 1/2$  and  $\bar{\tau} = 1$  in [18] to prove the lemma. We will first prove (5.7) for the case  $\bar{\tau} = 1$ . Let  $\tau > 0$ , and  $q \in \Omega_p(\tau)$ . Let  $\gamma$  and  $X$  be as in the proof of Lemma 5.3. Then by (3.1) and (5.5),

$$(5.8) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) &= \frac{dL_p}{d\tau}(q, \tau) - \nabla L_p \cdot X = \tau^p(R + |X|^2) - 2\tau^p|X|^2 \\ &= 2\tau^p R - \tau^p(R + |X|^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$(5.9) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \left| \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) \right| \leq \tau^p(R + |X|^2) \leq \frac{C'_1}{\tau} L_p(q, \tau)$$

where  $C'_1 > 0$  is as in the proof of Lemma 5.3. By (0.6) and (5.9),

$$(5.10) \quad \left| \frac{\partial l_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) \right| = \frac{(1-p)}{\tau^{1-p}} \left| \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) - \frac{(1-p)}{\tau} L_p(q, \tau) \right| \leq C \frac{l_p(q, \tau)}{\tau}$$

for any  $\tau > 0$  and  $q \in \Omega_p(\tau)$ . For the general case we let  $\bar{\tau} > 0, \rho > 0$ , and  $q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)$ . Then by Lemma 5.2 and (5.10),

$$\begin{aligned} \left| \frac{\partial l_p^{\bar{\tau}}}{\partial \tau}(q, \rho) \right| &= \left| \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} [\bar{\tau}^{1-2p} l_p(q, \bar{\tau}\rho)] \right| = \bar{\tau}^{2(1-p)} \left| \frac{\partial l_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \bar{\tau}\rho) \right| \\ &\leq C \bar{\tau}^{2(1-p)} \frac{l_p(q, \bar{\tau}\rho)}{\bar{\tau}\rho} = C \frac{l_p^{\bar{\tau}}(q, \rho)}{\rho} \end{aligned}$$

and the lemma follows. □

For any  $\tau \geq 0, q \in M$ , we let

$$(5.11) \quad \tilde{L}_p(q, \tau) = \tau^{1-p} L_p(q, \tau)$$

and

$$(5.12) \quad \begin{cases} G_p(q, \tau) = \tilde{L}_p(q, \tau) - \frac{n}{2p}\tau \\ G_p(\tau) = \min_{q \in M} G_p(q, \tau). \end{cases}$$

Note that by Lemma 1.6  $G_p(\tau)$  is well-defined.

**Lemma 5.5.**  $G_p(\tau)$  is a decreasing function of  $\tau \geq 0$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\tau > 0$  and  $q \in \Omega_p(\tau)$ . Let  $\gamma$  and  $X$  be as in the proof of Lemma 5.3. By (4.22) and (5.8),

$$(5.13) \quad \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) = 2\tau^p R - \frac{(1-p)}{\tau} L_p(q, \tau) + \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1} H(X) d\rho - \frac{(2p-1)}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho$$

where the integration is along the curve  $\gamma$ . Putting  $b = 1/2$  in (3.8),

$$(5.14) \quad \Delta L_p(q, \tau) \leq -2\tau^p R(q, \tau) + \frac{n}{2p\tau^{1-p}} + \frac{2p-1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \rho^p R d\rho - \frac{1}{\tau} \int_0^\tau \rho^{p+1} H(X) d\rho$$

By (5.13) and (5.14),

$$(5.15) \quad \begin{aligned} \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) + \Delta L_p(q, \tau) &\leq \frac{n}{2p\tau^{1-p}} - \frac{(1-p)}{\tau} L_p(q, \tau) \quad \forall \tau > 0, q \in \Omega_p(\tau) \\ \Rightarrow \frac{\partial \tilde{L}_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) + \Delta \tilde{L}_p(q, \tau) &\leq \tau^{1-p} \left( \frac{\partial L_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) + \Delta L_p(q, \tau) + \frac{(1-p)}{\tau} L_p(q, \tau) \right) \\ &= \frac{n}{2p} \end{aligned}$$

$$(5.15) \quad \Rightarrow \frac{\partial G_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) + \Delta G_p(q, \tau) \leq 0 \quad \forall \tau > 0, q \in \Omega_p(\tau).$$

By (5.15), Corollary 3.4, Corollary 3.5, and an argument similar to the proof of Proposition 2.15 of [25],

$$(5.16) \quad \frac{\partial G_p}{\partial \tau}(q, \tau) + \Delta G_p(q, \tau) \leq 0 \quad \text{in } M \times (0, \infty)$$

in the barrier sense of Perelman [18]. By the same argument as the proof of Lemma 3.1 of [25] but with (5.16) replacing (3.1) in the proof there the lemma follows. □

**Corollary 5.1.**

$$(5.17) \quad \min_{q \in M} l_p^\tau(q, \tau) \leq \frac{n(1-p)}{2p\tau^{1-2p}} \quad \forall \tau > 0, \tau > 0.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\bar{\tau} > 0$  and  $\tau > 0$ . By Lemma 5.5,

$$\begin{aligned}
 0 = G_p(0) &\geq G_p(\tau) = \min_{q \in M} \left( \tau^{1-p} L_p(q, \tau) - \frac{n}{2p} \tau \right) \\
 &= \min_{q \in M} \left( \frac{\tau^{2(1-p)}}{1-p} l_p(q, \tau) - \frac{n}{2p} \tau \right) \\
 (5.18) \quad \Rightarrow \quad \min_{q \in M} l_p(q, \tau) &\leq \frac{n(1-p)}{2p\tau^{1-2p}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

By Lemma 5.2 and (5.18), (5.17) follows. □

By Corollary 5.1 for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$  there exists  $q(\bar{\tau}) \in M$  such that

$$(5.19) \quad l_p^\bar{\tau}(q(\bar{\tau}), 1) = \min_{q \in M} l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, 1) \leq \frac{n(1-p)}{2p}.$$

Note that (5.17) and (5.19) will be used in the proof of the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.6.** *For any  $r_0 > 0$ ,  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ , there exists a constant  $C_1 = C_1(r_0, \tau_1, \tau_2) > 0$  such that*

$$(5.20) \quad R^\bar{\tau}(q, \tau) + l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \tau) \leq C_1$$

*holds for any  $\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$ ,  $\bar{\tau} > 0$  and  $q \in M$  satisfying*

$$(5.21) \quad d_{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}}(q(\bar{\tau}), q) \leq r_0.$$

*Proof.* Let  $\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$ ,  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ , and  $q \in M$  satisfy (5.21). Let  $\gamma : [0, d] \rightarrow M$  be a minimal normalized geodesic joining  $q$  and  $q(\bar{\tau})$  with respect to the metric  $g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}$  where  $d = d_{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}}(q(\bar{\tau}), q)$ . Then by Lemma 5.3,

$$\begin{aligned}
 |l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, 1)^{\frac{1}{2}} - l_p^\bar{\tau}(q(\bar{\tau}), 1)^{\frac{1}{2}}| &= \left| \int_0^d \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} l_p^\bar{\tau}(\gamma(\rho), 1)^{\frac{1}{2}} d\rho \right| \\
 &= \left| \int_0^d \langle \nabla^{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}} l_p^\bar{\tau}(\gamma(\rho), 1)^{\frac{1}{2}}, \gamma'(\rho) \rangle_{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}} d\rho \right| \\
 &\leq \int_0^d |\nabla^{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}} (l_p^\bar{\tau}(\gamma(\rho), 1)^{\frac{1}{2}})| d\rho \\
 &\leq Cd \\
 &\leq Cr_0 \\
 (5.22) \quad \Rightarrow \quad l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, 1) &\leq (l_p^\bar{\tau}(q(\bar{\tau}), 1)^{\frac{1}{2}} + Cr_0)^2 \quad \forall \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2.
 \end{aligned}$$

By Lemma 5.4 there exists a constant  $a > 0$  such that  $\forall \bar{\tau} > 0, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$ ,

$$(5.23) \quad l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \tau) \leq l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, 1) \left( \tau^a + \frac{1}{\tau^a} \right)$$



holds for any  $q \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\tau_2)$ . Since  $\Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\tau_2)$  is dense in  $M$  and  $l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \tau)$  is a continuous function, (5.23) holds for any  $q \in M$ . Hence by (5.19), (5.22), and (5.23),

$$(5.24) \quad l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \tau) \leq (\sqrt{n(1-p)/(2p)} + Cr_0)^2 \left( \tau_2^a + \frac{1}{\tau_1^a} \right) \quad \forall \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2.$$

By (5.24) and Lemma 5.3, (5.20) follows. □

Since

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} g_{ij}^\bar{\tau} = 2R_{ij}^\bar{\tau},$$

by (5.20), Lemma 1.5, Lemma 5.3, Lemma 5.4 and an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 5.6 we have the following lemma.

**Lemma 5.7.** *For any  $r_0 > 0$ ,  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ , there exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that*

$$\begin{cases} |l_p^\bar{\tau}(q_1, \tau) - l_p^\bar{\tau}(q_2, \tau)| \leq Cd_{g^{\bar{\tau}(1)}}(q_1, q_2) \\ |l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \rho_1) - l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \rho_2)| \leq C|\rho_1 - \rho_2| \end{cases}$$

for any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ ,  $\tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$ ,  $\rho_1, \rho_2 \in [\tau_1, \tau_2]$  and  $q_1, q_2, q$  satisfying (5.21).

By Lemma 5.6, Lemma 5.7, and an argument similar to the sketch of proof of Proposition 11.2 of [18] and a diagonalization argument we have

**Corollary 5.2.** *Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  has nonnegative curvature operator in  $(-\infty, 0)$ . If  $(M, \bar{g})$  is  $\kappa$ -noncollapsing on all scales, then there exist a sequence  $\{q_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \subset M$  and a sequence  $\{\bar{\tau}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \subset \mathbb{R}^+$ ,  $\bar{\tau}_i \rightarrow \infty$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ , such that  $l_p^{\bar{\tau}_i}(q, \tau)$  converges uniformly on*

$$d_{g^{\bar{\tau}_i(1)}}(q_i, q) \leq r_0, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$$

as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $r_0 > 0$  and  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ .

For any  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ ,  $\rho > 0$ ,  $0 < p < 1$ , let

$$\tilde{V}_p^\bar{\tau}(\rho) = \int_M \rho^{-\frac{(1-p)n}{2}} e^{-l_p^\bar{\tau}(q, \rho)} dV_{g^{\bar{\tau}(\rho)}}(q).$$

**Theorem 5.1.** *Suppose  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution of the Ricci flow. Let  $g$  and  $\bar{g}$  be related by (0.5) for some constant  $t_0 < 0$ . Let  $\bar{\tau}_0 > 0$  for  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $\bar{\tau}_0 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$ . When  $1/2 < p < 1$ , suppose also that  $(M, g(\tau))$  is compact and satisfies (1.21) in  $M \times (0, \infty)$  for some constant  $c_2 > 0$ . Let  $A_0 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$  and  $A_0$  be given by (4.15) with  $c = 1$  for  $1/2 < p < 1$ . Then for any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$  there exist constants  $A_1 \geq 0$ ,  $A_2 \geq 0$ , such that  $e^{-W(\bar{\tau}, \rho)} \tilde{V}_p^\bar{\tau}(\rho)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $\bar{\tau} > \bar{\tau}_0$  for any  $\rho$  satisfying (0.3) where*

$$(5.25) \quad W(\bar{\tau}, \rho) = (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p} + A_2\rho^{2p-3}e^{2c_2\bar{\tau}\rho})\bar{\tau}$$

with  $A_1 = A_2 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$ . Moreover (0.4) holds for any  $1/2 \leq p < 1$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\rho$  satisfy (0.3),  $\bar{\tau}_1 > \bar{\tau}_0$ , and  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau}_1\rho)$ . Let  $\gamma_v : [0, \bar{\tau}_1\rho] \rightarrow M$  be the unique  $\mathcal{L}_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}_1\rho), \bar{\tau}_1\rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic given by Theorem 1.2 which satisfies (1.18). By Corollary 3.3 and an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 4.1,  $v \in U'_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)$  and  $L_p(\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho) = \mathcal{L}_p(\gamma(\bar{\tau}\rho), \gamma, \bar{\tau}\rho)$  for any  $0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1$ . Let

$$Z_{\bar{\tau}}^{\rho}(v, \rho) = \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}} \rho^{-\frac{(1-p)n}{2}} e^{-W(\bar{\tau}, \rho)} e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p} l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)} J_p(v, \bar{\tau}\rho)$$

where  $W(\bar{\tau}, \rho)$  is given by (5.25),  $A_1 \geq 0, A_2 \geq 0$ , are constants to be determined later for  $1/2 < p < 1$  and  $A_1 = A_2 = 0$  for  $p = 1/2$ . By Lemma 5.2, Corollary 3.1, (4.18) and (4.22), for any  $\bar{\tau}_0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{d}{d\bar{\tau}} \log Z_{\bar{\tau}}^{\rho}(v, \rho) \\ & \leq -\frac{n}{2\bar{\tau}} - \frac{(1-2p)}{\bar{\tau}^{2p}} l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho) - \bar{\tau}^{(1-2p)} \rho \frac{d}{d\bar{\tau}} (l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)) + \rho \frac{d}{d\bar{\tau}} \log J_p(v, \bar{\tau}\rho) \\ & \quad - (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p}) - 2c_2 A_2 \rho^{2p-2} \bar{\tau} e^{2c_2 \bar{\tau}\rho} \\ & \leq -\frac{n}{2\bar{\tau}} - \frac{(1-2p)}{\bar{\tau}^{2p}} l_p + \frac{(1-p)}{\bar{\tau}^{1+p} \rho^{1-p}} \left( \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^{p+1} H(X) dw - (2p-1) \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^p R dw \right) \\ & \quad + \frac{(1-p)n}{\bar{\tau}} + \frac{2p-1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p} \rho^{1-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^{1-p} R dw - \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p} \rho^{1-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^{2-p} H(X) dw \\ & \quad - (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p}) - 2c_2 A_2 \rho^{2p-2} \bar{\tau} e^{2c_2 \bar{\tau}\rho} \\ & \leq -(2p-1) \frac{n}{2\bar{\tau}} + \frac{(2p-1)}{\bar{\tau}^{2p}} l_p + \frac{(2p-1)}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p} \rho^{1-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^{1-p} R dw - (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p}) \\ & \quad - \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p} \rho^{1-p}} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} \left( 1 - 2(1-p) \left( \frac{w}{\bar{\tau}} \right)^{2p-1} \right) w^{2-p} H(X) dw \\ (5.26) \quad & - 2c_2 A_2 \rho^{2p-2} \bar{\tau} e^{2c_2 \bar{\tau}\rho} \end{aligned}$$

where the integration is along the curve  $\gamma_v$ . We now divide the proof into two cases.

**Case 1:**  $p = 1/2$ .

Then the right hand side of (5.26) is  $\leq 0$  for any  $\bar{\tau}_0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1$ .

**Case 2:**  $1/2 < p < 1$ .

Since  $M$  has uniformly bounded Ricci curvature, by Corollary 1.1 we can extend  $\gamma_v$  to a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic on  $(0, \infty)$ . For any  $0 < c < 1, \tau > 0$ , choose  $\tau_0$  such that  $\tau < (1-c)\tau_0$ . Then by the Hamilton Harnack inequality [8] (4.24) holds. Letting  $\tau_0 \rightarrow \infty$  and  $c \rightarrow 1$  in (4.24),

$$(5.27) \quad H(X(\tau)) \geq -\frac{1}{\tau} R(\gamma(\tau), \tau) \quad \forall \tau > 0.$$

By (5.27) the right hand side of (5.26) is bounded above by

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\leq -(2p-1)\frac{n}{2\bar{\tau}} + \frac{(2p-1)}{\bar{\tau}^{2p}}l_p + \frac{(2p-1)}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p}\rho^{1-p}}\int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} w^{1-p}R dw - (A_0\rho + A_1\rho^{2p}) \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2\bar{\tau}^{2-p}\rho^{1-p}}\int_0^{\bar{\tau}\rho} \left(1 - 2(1-p)\left(\frac{w}{\bar{\tau}}\right)^{2p-1}\right)w^{1-p}R dw \\
 &\quad - 2c_2A_2\rho^{2p-2}\bar{\tau}e^{2c_2\bar{\tau}\rho} \\
 (5.28) \quad &\leq -(2p-1)\frac{n}{2\bar{\tau}} + \frac{(2p-1)}{\bar{\tau}^{2p}}l_p - A_1\rho^{2p} - 2c_2A_2\rho^{2p-2}\bar{\tau}e^{2c_2\bar{\tau}\rho}
 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $M$  is compact and satisfies (1.21), by (0.6) and Lemma 1.7 there exists a constant  $C_0 > 0$  such that

$$(5.29) \quad l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho) \leq C_0\left((\bar{\tau}\rho)^{2p} + \frac{e^{2c_2\bar{\tau}\rho}}{(\bar{\tau}\rho)^{2-2p}}\right).$$

Let  $A_1 = (2p-1)C_0$  and  $A_2 = (2p-1)C_0/(2c_2\bar{\tau}_0^3)$ . Then by (5.28) and (5.29) the right hand side of (5.26) is  $\leq 0$  for any  $\bar{\tau}_0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1$ .

By case 1 and case 2 and an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 4.1 we get that  $e^{-W(\bar{\tau},\rho)}\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $\bar{\tau} > \bar{\tau}_0$ . Hence when  $p = 1/2$ ,  $\tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho)$  is a monotone decreasing function of  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ . We now write

$$Z_p^{\bar{\tau}}(v, \rho) = e^{-W(\bar{\tau},\rho)}[(\bar{\tau}\rho)^{-(1-p)n}J_p(v, \bar{\tau}\rho)][\bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)}e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p}l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)}]\rho^{\frac{(1-p)n}{2}}.$$

By Theorem 2.1 and Corollary 3.3 there exist constants  $\bar{\tau}_0 > 0$  and  $r_1 > 0$  such that  $\overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)} \subset U'_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)$  for all  $0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_0$ . Since  $\overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)}$  is compact and the solution of a  $\mathcal{L}_p$ -geodesic depends continuously on the initial data, by an argument similar to the proof of Lemma 4.1, for any  $\varepsilon > 0$ , there exists  $\bar{\tau}_1 \in (0, \bar{\tau}_0)$  and a constant  $C_1 > 0$  such that  $\forall v \in \overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)}$ ,

$$(1-p)^{-n} - \varepsilon \leq (\bar{\tau}\rho)^{-(1-p)n}e^{-C_1\bar{\tau}\rho}J_p(v, \bar{\tau}\rho) \leq (1-p)^{-n} + \varepsilon \quad \forall 0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1.$$

Hence  $\forall v \in \overline{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)}, 0 < \bar{\tau} \leq \bar{\tau}_1$ ,

$$(5.30) \quad \begin{cases} Z_p^{\bar{\tau}}(v, \rho) \leq e^{C_1\bar{\tau}\rho - W(\bar{\tau},\rho)}((1-p)^{-n} + \varepsilon)\rho^{\frac{(1-p)n}{2}}[\bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)}e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p}l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)}] \\ Z_p^{\bar{\tau}}(v, \rho) \geq e^{C_1\bar{\tau}\rho - W(\bar{\tau},\rho)}((1-p)^{-n} - \varepsilon)\rho^{\frac{(1-p)n}{2}}[\bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)}e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p}l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)}]. \end{cases}$$

Let

$$g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) = \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)}e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p}l_p(\gamma_v(\bar{\tau}\rho), \bar{\tau}\rho)}.$$

By the proof of Lemma 4.2 there exists constants  $C_2 > 0, C'_3 > 0, K_1 > 0$  such that (4.8), (4.9), and (4.13) holds. Let  $C_4 = (1-p)K_1/(1+p)$  and

$C_5 = C'_3(1 - p)/(2 + p)$ . Then by (4.8), (4.9), and (4.13),

$$\begin{aligned}
 g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) &\leq \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)} e^{-\bar{\tau}^{1-2p}[-C_4(\bar{\tau}\rho)^{2p} + e^{-C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}|v|^2 - C_5(\bar{\tau}\rho)^{1+2p}]} \\
 (5.31) \qquad &\leq \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)} e^{-e^{-C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}(|v|/\bar{\tau}^{(2p-1)/2})^2} e^{C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} + C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p}}
 \end{aligned}$$

for any  $v \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)$ . Similarly

$$(5.32) \quad g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) \geq \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)} e^{-e^{C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}(|v|/\bar{\tau}^{(2p-1)/2})^2} e^{-C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} - C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p}} e^{C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}$$

for any  $v \in \Omega_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned}
 &\int_{U'_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)} g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) \, dv \\
 &\leq e^{C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} + C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{n}{2}(2p-1)} \int_{T_{p_0}M} e^{-e^{-C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}(|v|/\bar{\tau}^{(2p-1)/2})^2} \, dv \\
 &\leq e^{C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} + C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p} + (nC_2/2)\bar{\tau}\rho} \int_{\mathbb{R}^n} e^{-|v'|^2} \, dv' \\
 &\leq e^{C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} + C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p} + (nC_2/2)\bar{\tau}\rho} \pi^{\frac{n}{2}}.
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$(5.33) \quad \limsup_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \int_{U'_p(\bar{\tau}\rho)} g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) \, dv \leq \pi^{\frac{n}{2}}.$$

By (5.30) and (5.33),

$$\begin{aligned}
 (5.34) \quad &\limsup_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) \leq [(1 - p)^{-n} + \varepsilon] \pi^{\frac{n}{2}} \\
 &\Rightarrow \limsup_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) \leq (1 - p)^{-n} \pi^{\frac{n}{2}} \quad \text{as } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly by (5.32),

$$(5.35) \quad \int_{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)} g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) \, dv \geq e^{-C_4\bar{\tau}\rho^{2p} - C_5\bar{\tau}^2\rho^{1+2p} - (nC_2/2)\bar{\tau}\rho} \int_{\mathcal{B}(0, r_2)} e^{-|v'|^2} \, dv'.$$

where  $r_2 = \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{2p-1}{2}} e^{\frac{C_2\bar{\tau}\rho}{2}} r_1$ . Since  $r_2 \rightarrow \infty$  as  $\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0$ , letting  $\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0$  in (5.35),

$$(5.36) \quad \liminf_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \int_{\mathcal{B}(0, r_1)} g(v, \bar{\tau}, \rho) \, dv \geq \pi^{\frac{n}{2}}.$$

By (5.30) and (5.36),

$$\begin{aligned}
 (5.37) \quad &\liminf_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) \geq [(1 - p)^{-n} - \varepsilon] \pi^{\frac{n}{2}} \\
 &\Rightarrow \liminf_{\bar{\tau} \rightarrow 0^+} \tilde{V}_p^{\bar{\tau}}(\rho) \geq (1 - p)^{-n} \pi^{\frac{n}{2}} \quad \text{as } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0.
 \end{aligned}$$

By (5.34) and (5.37), (0.4) follows. □

### 6. Smoothness property of the reduced distance

In this section we will prove a result on the reduced distance  $l$  and the reduced volume  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$  used by Perelman in [18]. This result was used in the proof of Proposition 11.2 of [18] but no proof was given by Perelman in [18]. We will assume that  $(M, \bar{g})$  is an ancient  $\kappa$ -solution with  $g$  and  $\bar{g}$  being related by (0.5) for some fixed  $t_0 < 0$ . For any  $\tau > 0$ , let  $\Omega(\tau) = \Omega_{\frac{1}{2}}(\tau)$ . We also fix a point  $p_0 \in M$  and have  $L(q, \tau)$ ,  $\tilde{V}(\tau)$ , etc. all defined with respect to the reference point  $(p_0, t_0)$ .

By an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 6 of [5] we have

**Lemma 6.1.** *Let  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ . For any  $r_0 > 0$  there exists a unique solution  $0 \leq f \in C^\infty(\overline{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \times [\tau_1, \tau_2])$  of*

$$(6.1) \quad \begin{cases} f_\tau = \Delta f - Rf & \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0) \times (\tau_1, \tau_2) \\ f(q, \tau) = \tau^{-\frac{n}{2}} e^{-l(q, \tau)} & \text{on } \partial B_0(p_0, r_0) \times (\tau_1, \tau_2) \\ f(q, \tau_1) = \tau_1^{-\frac{n}{2}} e^{-l(q, \tau_1)} & \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0). \end{cases}$$

We now state and prove a result that was used implicitly by Perelman in his proof of Proposition 11.2 but no proof of it was given in [18].

**Theorem 6.1.** *Suppose  $\tilde{V}(\tau_1) = \tilde{V}(\tau_2)$  for some  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ . Then  $l(q, \tau) \in C^\infty(M \times (\tau_1, \tau_2))$  and satisfies*

$$(6.2) \quad l_\tau - \Delta l + |\nabla l|^2 - R + \frac{n}{2\tau} = 0$$

in  $M \times (\tau_1, \tau_2)$  in the classical sense.

*Proof.* Suppose  $\tilde{V}(\tau_1) = \tilde{V}(\tau_2)$  for some  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ . Let  $r_0 > 0$  and let  $f$  be the solution of (6.1) given by Lemma 6.1. Let

$$Q(\phi) = \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} \int_M \left\{ \nabla l \cdot \nabla \phi + \left( l_\tau + |\nabla l|^2 - R + \frac{n}{2\tau} \right) \phi \right\} dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau.$$

By [25],

$$(6.3) \quad Q(\phi) = 0$$

holds for any Lipschitz function  $\phi$  on  $M \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]$  which satisfies

$$\begin{cases} |\phi(q, \tau)| \leq C e^{-l(q, \tau)} & \forall q \in M, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2 \\ |\nabla \phi(q, \tau)| \leq C e^{-l(q, \tau)} & \forall q \in M, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2 \end{cases}$$

for some constant  $C > 0$ . Let  $h(q, \tau) = \tau^{-\frac{n}{2}} e^{-l(q, \tau)}$ . Then by (6.3) for any  $\phi \in C_0^\infty(M \times [\tau_1, \tau_2])$ ,

$$(6.4) \quad Q(h\phi) = 0 \quad \Rightarrow \quad \int_{\tau_1}^{\tau_2} \int_M [(h_\tau + Rh)\phi + \nabla h \cdot \nabla \phi] dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau = 0.$$

Let  $0 \leq \theta \in C_0^\infty(B_0(p_0, r_0))$ . For any  $\rho \in (\tau_1, \tau_2]$ , let  $0 \leq \psi \in C_0^\infty(B_0(p_0, r_0) \times [\tau_1, \rho])$  be the solution of

$$(6.5) \quad \begin{cases} \psi_\tau + \Delta\psi = 0 & \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0) \times (\tau_1, \rho) \\ \psi(q, \tau) = 0 & \text{on } \partial B_0(p_0, r_0) \times (\tau_1, \rho) \\ \psi(q, \rho) = \theta & \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0). \end{cases}$$

For any  $k \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , let  $r_k = (2k - 1)r_0 / (2k)$  and  $\eta_k \in C_0^\infty(B_0(p_0, r_0))$ ,  $0 \leq \eta_k \leq 1$ , such that  $\eta_k \equiv 1$  on  $\overline{B_0(p_0, r_k)}$  and  $\eta_k \equiv 0$  on  $M \setminus B_0(p_0, r_0)$ . Then by (6.1), (6.4), and (6.5),

$$(6.6) \quad \begin{aligned} & \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)(q, \rho)\theta(q) dV_{g(\rho)} \\ &= \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)(q, \rho)\psi(q, \rho) dV_{g(\rho)} - \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)(q, \tau_1)\psi(q, \tau_1) dV_{g(\tau_1)} \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \frac{d}{d\tau} \left( \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)\psi dV_{g(\tau)} \right) d\tau \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} [(f_\tau - h_\tau)\psi + (f - h)\psi_\tau + R(f - h)\psi] dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} [\psi\Delta f + (f - h)\psi_\tau] dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &\quad - \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (h_\tau + Rh)\psi dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Now by (6.4),

$$(6.7) \quad \begin{aligned} & \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (h_\tau + Rh)\psi\eta_k dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &= - \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \nabla h \cdot \nabla(\psi\eta_k) dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &= - \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (\eta_k \nabla h \cdot \nabla\psi + \psi \nabla h \cdot \nabla\eta_k) dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &= - \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (\nabla(h\eta_k) \cdot \nabla\psi + \psi \nabla h \cdot \nabla\eta_k - h \nabla\psi \cdot \nabla\eta_k) dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} h\eta_k \Delta\psi dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau - \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} \psi \nabla h \cdot \nabla\eta_k dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &\quad + \int_{\tau_1}^\rho \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} h \nabla\psi \cdot \nabla\eta_k dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\nabla h \in L^\infty(B_0(p_0, r_0) \times [\tau_1, \rho])$  by the proof of Lemma 2.2, letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$

in (6.7),

$$(6.8) \quad \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (h_{\tau} + R)\psi \, dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau = \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} h\Delta\psi \, dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau - \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{\partial B_0(p_0, r_0)} h \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial n} \, d\sigma d\tau.$$

By (6.1), (6.6) and (6.8),

$$(6.9) \quad \begin{aligned} & \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)(q, \rho)\theta(q) \, dV_{g(\rho)} \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} [\psi\Delta f - h\Delta\psi + (f - h)\psi_{\tau}] \, dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau + \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{\partial B_0(p_0, r_0)} h \frac{\partial\psi}{\partial n} \, d\sigma d\tau \\ &= \int_{\tau_1}^{\rho} \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)(\psi_{\tau} + \Delta\psi) \, dV_{g(\tau)} d\tau \\ &\leq 0. \end{aligned}$$

We now choose a sequence of smooth functions  $\theta_k \in C_0^{\infty}(B_0(p_0, r_0))$ ,  $0 \leq \theta_k \leq 1$ , such that  $\theta_k \rightarrow \text{sign}(f - h)_+(q, \rho)$  as  $k \rightarrow \infty$ . Putting  $\theta = \theta_k$  in (6.9) and letting  $k \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$(6.10) \quad \begin{aligned} & \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (f - h)_+(q, \rho) \, dV_{g(\rho)} \leq 0 \quad \forall \tau_1 < \rho \leq \tau_2 \\ \Rightarrow & f \leq h \quad \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0) \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly we have

$$(6.11) \quad \begin{aligned} & \int_{B_0(p_0, r_0)} (h - f)_+(q, \rho) \, dV_{g(\rho)} \leq 0 \quad \forall \tau_1 < \rho \leq \tau_2 \\ \Rightarrow & h \leq f \quad \text{in } B_0(p_0, r_0) \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]. \end{aligned}$$

Since  $r_0 > 0$  is arbitrary, by (6.10) and (6.11),

$$(6.12) \quad \begin{aligned} & \tau^{-\frac{n}{2}} e^{-l(q, \tau)} = h(q, \tau) = f(q, \tau) \quad \forall q \in M, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2 \\ \Rightarrow & l(q, \tau) \in C^{\infty}(M \times [\tau_1, \tau_2]). \end{aligned}$$

By (6.1) and (6.12), (6.2) follows. □

By Theorem 6.1 and an argument similar to that of [16] and [25] we have

**Theorem 6.2.** *Suppose  $\tilde{V}(\tau_1) = \tilde{V}(\tau_2)$  for some  $\tau_2 > \tau_1 > 0$ . Then  $l(q, \tau)$  satisfies*

$$2\Delta l - |\nabla l|^2 + R + \frac{l - n}{\tau} = 0 \quad \forall q \in M, \tau_1 \leq \tau \leq \tau_2$$

and

$$R_{ij}(q, \tau) - \frac{1}{2\tau}g_{ij}(q, \tau) + \nabla_i\nabla_j l = 0$$

in  $M \times (\tau_1, \tau_2)$ .

**Lemma 6.2.** *Let  $\bar{\tau} > 0$  and  $q \in M$ . Suppose  $\gamma$  is the  $\mathcal{L}(q, \bar{\tau})$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic given by Theorem 1.2 which satisfies  $\gamma(0) = p_0$  and  $\gamma(\bar{\tau}) = q$ . Then for any  $\delta_0 \in (0, 1)$ , there exists a constant  $C = C(\delta_0) > 0$  such that*

$$(6.13) \quad \frac{d_{g(\bar{\tau})}(\gamma(\delta\bar{\tau}), q)^2}{\bar{\tau}} \leq C(1 + l(q, \bar{\tau})) \quad \forall \delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1.$$

*Proof.* We will use a modification of the proof of Lemma 3.2 of [25] to prove the lemma. Let  $\bar{\tau} > 0$ . Since  $\Omega(\bar{\tau})$  is dense in  $M$  and  $l(q, \bar{\tau})$  is continuous in  $q$ , it suffices to prove (6.13) for  $q \in \Omega(\bar{\tau})$ . Let  $\delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1$ . Then

$$\begin{aligned} & d_{\bar{\tau}}(\gamma(\delta\bar{\tau}), q) \\ &= \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \frac{d}{d\rho} d_\rho(\gamma(\delta\rho), \gamma(\rho)) d\rho \\ &= \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial\rho} d_\rho(\gamma(\delta\rho), \gamma(\rho)) + \delta \nabla_I d_\rho(\gamma(\delta\rho), \gamma(\rho)) \cdot \gamma'(\delta\rho) \right. \\ &\quad \left. + \nabla_{II} d_\rho(\gamma(\delta\rho), \gamma(\rho)) \cdot \gamma'(\rho) \right) d\rho \\ (6.14) \quad &= I_1 + I_2 + I_3 \end{aligned}$$

where  $\nabla_I$  and  $\nabla_{II}$  is the gradient with respect to the first and second argument respectively. Now by (0.6), (3.1), and Lemma 5.3,

$$\begin{aligned} |\gamma'(\delta\rho)| &= |\nabla l(\gamma(\delta\rho), \delta\rho)| \leq C \left( \frac{l(\gamma(\delta\rho), \delta\rho)}{\delta\rho} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C(\delta_0\rho)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \left( \frac{L(\gamma(\delta\rho), \delta\rho)}{2\sqrt{\delta\rho}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &\leq C(\delta_0\rho)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \left( \frac{L(\gamma(\bar{\tau}), \bar{\tau})}{2\sqrt{\delta\rho}} \right)^{\frac{1}{2}} \leq C(\delta_0\rho)^{-\frac{3}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau})}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$(6.15) \quad I_2 \leq C'\bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau})}.$$

Similarly,

$$(6.16) \quad I_3 \leq C\bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau})}.$$

For any  $0 < \rho \leq \bar{\tau}$ , let  $x(\rho) = \gamma(\delta\rho)$ ,  $y(\rho) = \gamma(\rho)$ , and

$$r_0(\rho) = (l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho^{\frac{5}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}}.$$



Then for any  $x \in B_\rho(x(\rho), r_0(\rho))$ , by Lemma 5.3,

$$(6.17) \quad \sqrt{l(x, \rho)} \leq \sqrt{l(x(\rho), \rho)} + \frac{C}{\sqrt{\rho}} r_0(\rho) \leq \sqrt{l(x(\rho), \rho)} + C(l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}}.$$

By Lemma 5.4 there exists a constant  $C > 0$  such that

$$(6.18) \quad \begin{aligned} l(x(\rho), \rho) &\leq \delta^{-C} l(x(\rho), \delta\rho) \quad \forall 0 < \rho \leq \bar{\tau} \\ \Rightarrow l(x(\rho), \rho) &\leq \delta_0^{-C} \frac{L(q, \bar{\tau})}{2\sqrt{\delta_0\rho}} \leq \delta_0^{-C-\frac{1}{2}} \rho^{-\frac{1}{2}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{2}} l(q, \bar{\tau}). \end{aligned}$$

By (6.17) and (6.18),

$$(6.19) \quad \begin{aligned} \sqrt{l(x, \rho)} &\leq C\rho^{-\frac{1}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau})} + C(l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}} \quad \forall x \in B_\rho(x(\rho), r_0(\rho)) \\ &\leq C(\rho^{-\frac{1}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} + \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}}) \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1} \quad \forall x \in B_\rho(x(\rho), r_0(\rho)). \end{aligned}$$

By Lemma 5.3 and (6.19),

$$(6.20) \quad R(x, \rho) \leq C \frac{l(x, \rho)}{\rho} \leq C\rho^{-1} (\rho^{-\frac{1}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} + \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}})^2 (l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1) \quad \forall x \in B_\rho(x(\rho), r_0(\rho)).$$

Similarly

$$(6.21) \quad R(x, \rho) \leq C\rho^{-1} (\rho^{-\frac{1}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} + \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}})^2 (l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1) \quad \forall x \in B_\rho(y(\rho), r_0(\rho)).$$

By Lemma 8.3(b) of [18] and (6.20), (6.21),

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial}{\partial \rho} d_\rho(\gamma(\delta\rho), \gamma(\rho)) &\leq C[\rho^{-1} (\rho^{-\frac{1}{4}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{4}} + \rho^{\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{1}{8}})^2 (l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1) r_0(\rho) + r_0(\rho)^{-1}] \\ &\leq C(\rho^{-\frac{7}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{3}{8}} + \rho^{-\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{3}{8}} + \rho^{-\frac{1}{2}} + \rho^{-\frac{5}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{8}}) \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$(6.22) \quad \begin{aligned} I_1 &\leq C \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1} \int_0^{\bar{\tau}} (\rho^{-\frac{7}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{3}{8}} + \rho^{-\frac{1}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{-\frac{3}{8}} + \rho^{-\frac{1}{2}} + \rho^{-\frac{5}{8}} \bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{8}}) d\rho \\ &\leq C\bar{\tau}^{\frac{1}{2}} \sqrt{l(q, \bar{\tau}) + 1}. \end{aligned}$$

By (6.14), (6.15), (6.16), and (6.22), we get (6.13) and the lemma follows.  $\square$

We now let  $\{\bar{\tau}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  be a sequence of positive numbers such that  $\bar{\tau}_i \rightarrow \infty$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . For any  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ ,  $\tau > 0$ , let

$$\tilde{V}_i(\tau) = \int_M \tau^{-\frac{n}{2}} e^{-\bar{l}_i(q, \tau)} dV_{g_i(\tau)}$$

where  $g_i(\tau) = g(\bar{\tau}_i\tau)/\bar{\tau}_i$  and  $\bar{l}_i(q, \tau)$  is the  $l = l_{\frac{1}{2}}$  function with respect to  $g_i(\tau)$ . Since by Lemma 5.2  $\bar{l}_i(q, \tau) = l(q, \bar{\tau}_i\tau)$ ,  $\tilde{V}_i(\tau) = \tilde{V}(\bar{\tau}_i\tau)$ . As observed by Perelman [18] there exists a sequence  $\{q_i\}_{i=1}^\infty \subset M$  and a subsequence of  $\{\bar{\tau}_i\}_{i=1}^\infty$  which we may assume without loss of generality to be the sequence itself such that the sequence of pointed manifold  $(M, g_i, q_i)$  will converge in the sense of Hamilton [10]  $0 < \tau < \infty$  to some pointed manifold  $(\hat{M}, \hat{g}, q_0)$  which also satisfies the backward Ricci flow as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ .

That is there exists a sequence of open sets  $\hat{U}_i \subset \hat{M}$  with  $q_0 \in \hat{U}_i$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and a sequence of diffeomorphisms  $F_i : \hat{U}_i \rightarrow \hat{V}_i$  where  $q_i \in \hat{V}_i$  is open in  $M$  and  $F_i(q_0) = q_i$  such that for any compact set  $K \subset M$  there exists  $i_0 \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  such that  $K \subset \hat{U}_i$  for all  $i \geq i_0$ . Moreover if  $\hat{g}_i = F_i^*(g_i)$  is the pull-back metric of  $g_i$ , then the metric  $\hat{g}_i$  and all its derivatives will converge to  $\hat{g}$  and the corresponding derivatives uniformly on  $K \times [a, b]$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $0 < a < b < \infty$ .

Moreover  $\bar{l}_i(q_i, 1) \leq n/2$  for all  $i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$  and  $\bar{l}_i(q, \tau)$  converges uniformly on  $B_{g_i(1)}(q_i, r) \times [a, b]$  to some function  $\hat{l}(q, \tau)$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $r > 0$  and  $0 < a < b < \infty$ . By Lemma 5.3 and Lemma 5.4 we may assume without loss of generality that  $\bar{l}_{i,\tau}(q, \tau), \nabla\bar{l}_i$  converge weakly to  $\bar{l}_\tau(q, \tau)$  and  $\nabla\bar{l}$  respectively as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . Then  $\bar{l}_\tau, |\nabla\bar{l}| \in L^\infty_{loc}(\hat{M} \times (0, \infty))$ . Perelman [18] also proved that  $\tilde{V}_i(\tau)$  decreases and converges to some positive constant  $\tilde{V}_0$  which is independent of  $\tau \in (0, \infty)$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ . Let  $\hat{R}_{ij}(q, \tau)$  and  $\hat{R}(q, \tau)$  be the Ricci curvature and scalar curvature of  $\hat{M}$  with respect to the metric  $\hat{g}(q, \tau)$ . By an argument similar to the proof of Theorem 6.1 and Theorem 6.2 we have

**Theorem 6.3.**  $\bar{l}(q, \tau) \in C^\infty(M \times (0, \infty))$  and  $\bar{l}(q, \tau)$  satisfies

$$\bar{l}_\tau - \Delta\bar{l} + |\nabla\bar{l}|^2 - \hat{R} + \frac{n}{2\tau} = 0$$

in  $\hat{M} \times (0, \infty)$ .

**Theorem 6.4.** Let  $\hat{q} \in \hat{M}$ . Let  $\bar{q}_i \in M$  be such that  $\hat{q} = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} F_i^{-1}(\bar{q}_i)$ . For each  $\rho \geq 1, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+$ , let  $\gamma_i : [0, \bar{\tau}_i\rho] \rightarrow M$  be the  $\mathcal{L}(\bar{q}_i, \bar{\tau}_i\rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic given by Theorem 1.2. Let  $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(w) = \gamma_i(\bar{\tau}_i w), 0 \leq w \leq \rho$ . Then there exists a  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic  $\hat{\gamma} : (0, \rho) \rightarrow \hat{M}$  with  $\hat{\gamma}(\rho) = \hat{q}$  which is a  $\mathcal{L}_{\rho_0, \frac{1}{2}}^{\hat{\gamma}(\rho_0)}(\hat{q}, \rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic on  $[\rho_0, \rho]$  for any  $\rho_0 \in (0, \rho)$  such that for any  $\rho_0 \in (0, \rho)$   $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(w)$  will converge uniformly on  $\rho_0 \leq w \leq \rho$  to a  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic of  $\hat{M}$  with  $\hat{\gamma}(\rho) = \hat{q}$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ .

*Proof.* Let  $\hat{q} \in \hat{M}$  and let  $\rho \geq 1$ . We choose  $\bar{q}_i \in M$  such that

$$\hat{q} = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} F_i^{-1}(\bar{q}_i).$$

Let  $b > a > 0$ . Since  $d_{g_i(w)}(q_i, \bar{q}_i)$  converges uniformly to  $d_{\hat{g}(w)}(q_0, \hat{q})$  on  $a \leq w \leq b$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$ , there exists a constant  $C_1 > 0$  such that

$$(6.23) \quad d_{g_i(\rho)}(q_i, \bar{q}_i) \leq C_1 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

Since  $\bar{l}_i$  converges to  $\bar{l}$  uniformly on  $\overline{B_{g_i(1)}(q_i, r)} \times [a, b]$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $r > 0$ ,  $b > a > 0$ , there exists a constant  $C_2 > 0$  such that

$$(6.24) \quad \bar{l}_i(\bar{q}_i, \rho) \leq \bar{l}(\hat{q}, \rho) + C_2 \quad \forall i \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

Let  $\delta_0 \in (0, 1)$ . By Lemma 5.1 and Lemma 6.2  $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i} : [0, 1] \rightarrow M$  is a minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic with  $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(1) = \bar{q}_i$  and

$$(6.25) \quad \begin{aligned} & \frac{d_{g(\bar{\tau}_i\rho)}(\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\delta\bar{\tau}_i\rho), \bar{q}_i)^2}{\bar{\tau}_i\rho} \leq C(1 + l(\bar{q}_i, \bar{\tau}_i\rho)) \quad \forall \delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+ \\ \Rightarrow & \frac{d_{g_i(\rho)}(\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\delta\rho), \bar{q}_i)^2}{\rho} \leq C(1 + \bar{l}_i(\bar{q}_i, \rho)) \quad \forall \delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+. \end{aligned}$$

By (6.24) and (6.25) there exists a constant  $C_3 > 0$  such that

$$(6.26) \quad \frac{d_{g_i(\rho)}(\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\delta\rho), \bar{q}_i)^2}{\rho} \leq C_3 \quad \forall \delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

By (6.23) and (6.26),

$$d_{g_i(\rho)}(\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\delta\rho), q_i) \leq C_1 + \sqrt{C_3\rho} \quad \forall \delta_0 \leq \delta \leq 1, i \in \mathbb{Z}^+.$$

Hence by the Hamilton compactness theorem [10] and Lemma 5.1  $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}$  will converge uniformly on  $\rho_0 \leq \tau \leq \rho$  to a  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic of  $\hat{M}$  with  $\hat{\gamma}(\rho) = \hat{q}$  as  $i \rightarrow \infty$  for any  $\rho_0 \in (0, \rho)$ . Since  $\delta_0$  is arbitrary,  $\lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\delta\rho)$  exists for any  $\delta \in (0, 1)$ . For any  $0 < \tau \leq \rho$ , let

$$\hat{\gamma}(\tau) = \lim_{i \rightarrow \infty} \gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}(\tau).$$

Then  $\hat{\gamma} : (0, \rho) \rightarrow \hat{M}$  is a  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic of  $\hat{M}$  with  $\hat{\gamma}(\rho) = \hat{q}$ . Since each  $\gamma_i^{\bar{\tau}_i}$  is a  $\mathcal{L}(\bar{q}_i, \rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic,  $\hat{\gamma}|_{[\rho_0, \rho]}$  is a  $\mathcal{L}_{\rho_0, \frac{1}{2}}^{\hat{\gamma}(\rho_0)}(\hat{q}, \rho)$ -length minimizing  $\mathcal{L}$ -geodesic on  $[\rho_0, \rho]$  for any  $\rho_0 \in (0, \rho)$  and the theorem follows. □

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS  
NATIONAL CHUNG CHENG UNIVERSITY  
168 UNIVERSITY ROAD, MIN-HSIUNG  
CHIA-YI 621, TAIWAN, R.O.C.  
e-mail: syhsu@math.ccu.edu.tw

### References

- [1] M. P. do Carmo, *Riemannian Geometry*, Birkhäuser, Boston, Mass, USA, 1992.
- [2] B. Chow, *Lecture notes on Ricci flow I, II, III, Clay Mathematics Institute, Summer School Program 2005 on Ricci Flow, 3-Manifolds and Geometry June 20–July 16 at MSRI*, [http://www.claymath.org/programs/summer\\_school/2005/program.php#ricci](http://www.claymath.org/programs/summer_school/2005/program.php#ricci).

- [3] B. Chow and D. Knopf, *The Ricci Flow: An Introduction*, Mathematical Surveys and Monographs, Amer. Math. Soc. **110**, Providence, R.I., USA, 2004.
- [4] H. D. Cao and X. P. Zhu, *A complete proof of the Poincaré and Geometrization conjectures—Application of the Hamilton-Perelman theory of the Ricci flow*, Asian J. Math. **10-2** (2006), 165–492.
- [5] R. S. Hamilton, *Three-manifolds with positive Ricci curvature*, J. Differential Geom. **17-2** (1982), 255–306.
- [6] ———, *Four-manifolds with positive curvature operator*, J. Differential Geom. **24-2**, (1986), 153–179.
- [7] ———, *The Ricci flow on surfaces*, Contemp. Math. **71** (1988), 237–261.
- [8] ———, *The Harnack estimate for the Ricci flow*, J. Differential Geom. **37-1**, (1993), 225–243.
- [9] ———, *The formation of singularities in the Ricci flow*, Surveys in differential geometry, Vol. II, Cambridge, MA, (1993), 7–136, International Press, Cambridge, MA, 1995.
- [10] ———, *A compactness property for solutions of the Ricci flow*, Amer. J. Math. **117-3** (1995), 545–572.
- [11] S. Y. Hsu, *Global existence and uniqueness of solutions of the Ricci flow equation*, Differential Integral Equations **14-3** (2001), 305–320.
- [12] ———, *Large time behaviour of solutions of the Ricci flow equation on  $R^2$* , Pacific J. Math. **197-1** (2001), 25–41.
- [13] ———, *Asymptotic profile of solutions of a singular diffusion equation as  $t \rightarrow \infty$* , Nonlinear Anal. TMA **48** (2002), 781–790.
- [14] ———, *Dynamics of solutions of a singular diffusion equation*, Adv. Differential Equations **7-1** (2002), 77–97.
- [15] ———, *A simple proof on the non-existence of shrinking breathers for the Ricci flow*, Calc. Var. Partial Differential Equations **27-1** (2006), 59–73.
- [16] B. Kleiner and J. Lott, *Notes on Perelman’s papers*, <http://arxiv.org/abs/math/0605667v2>.
- [17] J. W. Morgan and G. Tian, *Ricci Flow and the Poincaré Conjecture*, Clay Mathematics Institute Monographs **3**, American Mathematical Society, Providence, RI, USA, 2007.
- [18] G. Perelman, *The entropy formula for the Ricci flow and its geometric applications*, <http://arXiv.org/abs/math.DG/0211159>.

- [19] ———, *Ricci flow with surgery on three-manifolds*, <http://arXiv.org/abs/math.DG/0303109>.
- [20] W. X. Shi, *Deforming the metric on complete Riemannian manifolds*, *J. Differential Geom.* **30** (1989), 223–301.
- [21] ———, *Ricci deformation of the metric on complete non-compact Riemannian manifolds*, *J. Differential Geom.* **30** (1989), 303–394.
- [22] E. M. Stein, *Singular Integrals and Differentiability Properties of Functions*, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 1970.
- [23] L. F. Wu, *The Ricci flow on complete  $R^2$* , *Comm. Anal. Geom.* **1** (1993), 439–472.
- [24] ———, *A new result for the porous medium equation*, *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.* **28** (1993), 90–94.
- [25] R. Ye, *On the  $l$ -function and the reduced volume of Perelman I*, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **360**-1 (2008), 507–531.
- [26] ———, *On the  $l$ -function and the reduced volume of Perelman II*, *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.* **360**-1 (2008), 533–544.